



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

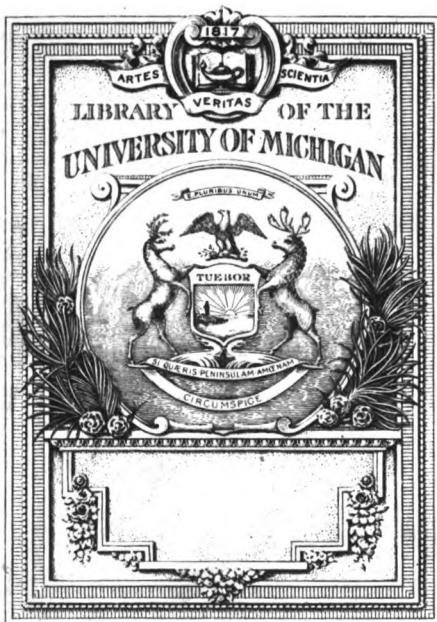
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

A 546845



QA  
35  
.P72  
182













**ELEMENTS**  
**OF**  
**GEOMETRY.**

**BEING CHIEFLY**

**A SELECTION**

**FROM**

**PLAYFAIR'S GEOMETRY,**

**WITH**

**ADDITIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS.**

**FROM THE FIFTH ENGLISH EDITION.**

*Ed. by Francis Nichols*

---

**PHILADELPHIA:**

**PRINTED AND PUBLISHED AT No. 24, ARCH STREET.**

**A. Walker, Agt.**

**1829.**

EASTERN DISTRICT OF PENNSYLVANIA, to wit:

\*\*\*\*\*  
\* L.S. \* **BE IT REMEMBERED**, THAT on the twenty-second day of  
\* \* \* \* \* December, in the fifty-third year of the Independence of the United States of  
\* \* \* \* \* America, A. D. 1828, Francis Nichols, of the said District, hath deposited in  
this office the title of a book, the right whereof he claims as proprietor, in the words follow-  
ing, to wit:

**ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY.** Being chiefly a Selection  
from **PLAYFAIR'S GEOMETRY**, with *additions* and *improvements*. From the fifth English edition.

In conformity to the Act of the Congress of the United States, entitled "An Act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned;"—And also to the Act, entitled "An Act supplementary to an Act, entitled "An Act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned," and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching historical and other prints."

D. CALDWELL,  
*Clerk of the Eastern District of Pennsylvania.*

Hist. Sci.  
Tuttle  
6-18-37  
34424

## PREFACE.

Many years ago the editor of this book published two large impressions of Playfair's Geometry, with some alterations and improvements, which rendered the American edition more convenient to students than the English. The work has been long out of print, and a republication of it has been often requested by public and private teachers of geometry. It is therefore again presented to the public without an adequate compensation for the time and labour bestowed on the preparation of a new and improved edition.

The books of geometry, used in places of education in this country, are two large, and otherwise exceptionable. The best editions of Euclid's Elements are difficult and repulsive to students. They require some alterations to render them fit for the use of youth in schools and colleges. False reverence of antiquity, and old prejudice, have assigned to Euclid's Geometry a higher rank in mathematical science than its intrinsic merit can justly claim. But it is capable of alterations and improvements, and may be made a good introduction to geometry.

This book is partly an abridgment of the fifth English edition of Playfair's Geometry. It differs from Playfair's Geometry chiefly in additions, omissions, and alterations.

Many teachers of mathematics in our colleges and higher schools have often expressed a wish that a se-

lection from Euclid's Elements might be published, if it could be executed without deviating much from the form of the original. To accomplish this desirable object is the main design of the present performance.

Euclid's Geometry contains parts which are never read, with obscurities and difficulties which discourage youth, and impede the study of mathematics. The prejudices of education and custom have retained an old book in schools and colleges, to the exclusion of modern works of greater merit. We find that on the continent of Europe Euclid's Geometry has nearly sunk into oblivion, and modern systems now occupy its place. But still, as the ruins of ancient edifices furnish the materials of elegant modern structures, so Euclid's treatise of geometry may be so modified as to be converted into a plain and useful book for youth.

Some definitions, postulates, and axioms, have been added by the editor, on the supposition that they might be wanted in the course of the work, for the purpose of rendering the demonstrations of certain propositions shorter or plainer than those of Euclid. Some useful propositions, which were not known to the ancients, have been added to this treatise; and many propositions have been omitted, which are either useless, or merely auxiliary to the demonstrations of others. Some demonstrations which were long and tedious, or difficult to learners, have been rejected, and others have been adopted from modern books instead of them. But no new demonstrations have been given unless they were decidedly preferable to Euclid's.

The enunciations of many propositions are expressed with more precision and brevity than they are in former editions of Euclid's Elements. Repetitions and circumlocutions in the demonstrations have been generally avoided.

Numerous articles, marked Ed., are not found in

Playfair's Geometry, and have been taken chiefly from other books. They were collected at different times, but the editor does not recollect the names of the authors of many of them. In the latter part of the volume many references have been designedly omitted; for it appeared useless to repeat the references to preceding articles, which must have become familiar to the reader by their frequent recurrence. But the teacher should require his pupils to supply such omissions when they are reciting a demonstration.

Toward the ends of the first, third, and sixth Books there is a number of elementary propositions, which are not necessary in a course of mathematics, and may be either read or omitted. They will serve as exercises for students.

On revising the printed sheets I have observed that some changes might be made with advantage to the work. In its present form however I am confident that it will be found plainer and more convenient to students than any book of geometry which is now used in the higher places of education.

If this attempt to facilitate the study of geometry be favourably received by the public, it will be followed by another work, which is partly executed, and will contain a large collection of Geometrical Problems, Trigonometry, &c.

EDITOR.



# ERRATA.

The reader is desired to attend to the following Corrections and Amendments. The editor regrets the necessity of such a long list of errors. He is not the publisher of the book, and is not responsible for typographical imperfections and errors.

PAGE.	LINE.	
21	at bot.	10. Two straight lines which intersect each other cannot be both parallel to the same straight line.
37	7	For 4 <i>Def.</i> read <i>Cor. 3 Def.</i>
38	11 bot.	After <i>AF</i> put ,
45	18	For <i>agles</i> read <i>angles</i>
54	20	For first <i>comma</i> read =
56	2	After line 1 read <i>AC, BD bisect each other, &amp;</i>
56	10	For <i>angled</i> read <i>angles</i>
65	9	For , read .
66	2	For <i>contains</i> read <i>contain</i>
68	1	For $-\frac{1}{2}AB = \frac{1}{2}DE$ read $=\frac{1}{2}AB - \frac{1}{2}DE$
71	18	For <i>time</i> read <i>times</i>
72	14	Add, <i>Algebraically.</i> Let $a$ denote the greater part, and $x$ the less; then $a+x$ is the sum of the parts, and $a-x$ is the difference. Hence $(a+x) \times (a-x) = aa - xx$ , which is the prop.
95	6	For <i>DEHG</i> read <i>DEHF</i>
103	6 bot.	For <i>ET</i> read <i>EI</i>
110	1 bot.	For <i>These</i> and the first four lines of p. 111, read, <i>Because the consequents of these two analogies are the same the antecedents are proportional (Propor. A. p. viii); therefore, the triangle ECH : ADL :: base CH : DL.</i>
114	22	For <i>meet</i> read <i>meet, for if not, the angles B and E would be equal to two right angles (29. 1)</i>
116	2 bot.	For ; <i>wherefore</i> read , and
123	18	For 61 read 6
137	4 bot.	For 2 read 3
142	12	For <i>ciroles</i> read <i>circle</i>
149	8 bot.	For 2 read 3
151	2	At the upper right corner of the fig. write <i>E</i>
152	7, 10, 13, 23	For 2 <i>Sup.</i> read 11
158	13	For <i>axis</i> read <i>axes</i>
161	15	For 11 read 12
163	25	For $p$ read $n$
163	4 bot.	After <i>cylinders</i> read <i>of equal altitudes</i>
169	4	For 13 12 read 11 12
175	3 bot.	For 17 read 16

**A.** If the antecedents in two proportions be the same, the consequents are proportional; and if the consequents be the same, the antecedents are proportional.

If  $A : B :: C : D$ ,  
 and  $A : E :: C : F$ ;  
 then  $B : E :: D : F$ .  
 For  $A : C :: B : D$  (36), and  $A : C :: E : F$ ;  
 $\therefore B : D :: E : F$  (34),  $\therefore B : E :: D : F$ .  
 Again, if  $B : A :: D : C$ ,  
 and  $E : A :: F : C$ ;  
 then  $B : E :: D : F$ .

The proof is the same as the first.

**B** If the means in two proportions be the same, the extremes are proportional in a cross order; and if the extremes be the same, the means are proportional in a cross order.

If  $A : B :: C : D$  } , then  $A : F :: E : D$ .  
 and  $E : B :: C : F$  }  
 For  $AD = BC$ , and  $EF = BC$  (26);  $\therefore$   
 $AD = EF$ ,  $\therefore A : F :: E : D$  (33).  
 Again, if  $B : A :: D : C$ ,  
 and  $B : E :: F : C$ ,  
 it may be proved in the same manner that  $A : F :: E : D$ .



# INTRODUCTION.

---

## OF PROPORTION.

THE doctrine of PROPORTION, in the Fifth Book of Euclid's Elements, is obscure, and unintelligible to most readers. It is not taught either in foreign or American colleges, and is now become obsolete. It has therefore been omitted in this edition of Euclid's Elements, and a different method of treating PROPORTION has been substituted for it. This is the common algebraical method, which is concise, simple, and perspicuous; and is sufficient for all useful purposes in practical mathematics. The method is clear and intelligible to all persons who know the first principles of algebra. The rudiments of algebra ought to be taught before geometry, because algebra may be applied to geometry in certain cases, and facilitates the study of it.

Those persons who desire to see the doctrine of PROPORTION treated according to a general method which is plainer than Euclid's, and equally accurate, may consult the geometry of Playfair, Ingram, Leslie, Cresswell, and J. R. Young. Hutton, and other recent writers have adopted the algebraical method in their elements of geometry. Proportion is not properly a geometrical subject.

B



## PROPORTION.

1. A less magnitude is said to be a part of a greater magnitude, when the less measures the greater, that is, when the less is contained in the greater a certain number of times exactly.

2. A greater magnitude is said to be a multiple of a less, when the greater is measured by the less, that is, when the greater contains the less a certain number of times exactly.

Thus, if A be exactly three times B, then A is said to be a multiple of B; and B is said to be a part of A.

3. When several magnitudes are multiples of as many other magnitudes, and each magnitude contains its part the same number of times, the former magnitudes are said to be equimultiples of the latter, and the latter are said to be like parts of the former.

Thus, if A be triple of B, and C triple of D, then A, C are called equimultiples of B, D; and B, D are called like parts of A, C.

4. Two magnitudes are said to be homogeneous, or of the same kind, when the less can be multiplied so as to exceed the greater.

Thus, a minute may be multiplied till the product exceed an hour, a yard till the product exceed a mile, &c.

5. Two quantities are said to be commensurable, when they are divisible by a third quantity without a remainder; and the third quantity is called their common measure. Thus, 4 and 6 are commensurable, and 2 is their common measure.

6. Two quantities are said to be incommensurable, when they are not divisible by a third quantity without a remainder.

Thus, 4 and 7 are not commensurable, because they cannot be divided by a third number without a remainder.

7. Between any two finite quantities of the *same kind* there subsists a certain relation in respect of magnitude, which is called their *ratio*.

8. When we observe two quantities, one of which is double of the other, we acquire the idea of a particular ratio, or relation, which the greater has to the less; and when we afterward find two other quantities, one of which is also double of the other, we say that they have the same ratio which the two for-

mer quantities have to each other, or that the four quantities are proportionals. In like manner, by observing one quantity to be triple, quadruple, or any multiple of another, we acquire ideas of other ratios; and thus we obtain ideas of all ratios where the greater quantity is a multiple of the less.

9. The comparison between two quantities is made by considering how often one quantity contains the other, or how often one quantity is contained in the other. Thus, in comparing 6 with 3, we observe that 6 has a certain magnitude with respect to 3, for 6 contains 3 twice; and in comparing 6 with 2, we observe that 6 has a different relative magnitude, for 6 contains 2 three times.

10. The quantities must be of the same kind, else they cannot be compared together, and therefore no judgment of their equality or inequality can be formed. Thus, 2 hours and 3 yards cannot be compared together, because they are quantities of a different nature.

11. The ratio of A to B is expressed by  $\frac{A}{B}$ , or by two points placed between them, as A : B. The former quantity A is called the *antecedent* of the ratio, and the latter B the *consequent*.

12. The antecedent and consequent are called the *terms* of the ratio, and the quotient of the two terms is called the *measure*, *index*, or *exponent* of the ratio. Thus, if  $\frac{A}{B} = m$ , then  $m$  is called the *measure*, &c. of the ratio of A to B.

13. One ratio is greater than another when its antecedent is a greater multiple, part, or parts of its consequent than the antecedent of the other ratio is of its consequent. Thus, the ratio 7 : 4 is greater than the ratio 8 : 5, because  $\frac{7}{4}$  and  $\frac{8}{5}$  reduced to a common denominator are  $\frac{35}{20}$  and  $\frac{32}{20}$ , and  $\frac{35}{20}$  is greater than  $\frac{32}{20}$  by  $\frac{3}{20}$ .

14. If the antecedents of any ratios be multiplied together, and also the consequents, a new ratio results, which is said to be compounded of the former ratios. Thus, if A : B and C : D be two ratios, then AC : BD is said to be compounded of the two ratios A : B and C : D.

15. If a ratio be compounded of two equal ratios, it is called a *duplicate* ratio; if of three equal ratios, it is called a *triplicate* ratio, &c. Thus, if  $\frac{A}{B} = m$ , and  $\frac{C}{D} = m$ , then  $\frac{AC}{BD} = m^2$ , that is, the ratio of AC to BD is duplicate of the ratio of A to

B, or of C to D. If  $\frac{A}{B} = m$ ,  $\frac{C}{D} = m$ ,  $\frac{E}{F} = m$ ; then  $\frac{ACE}{BDF} =$

$m^3$ , that is, the ratio of ACE to BDF is triplicate of the ratio of A to B, or of C to D, or of E to F.

16. The ratio of A to B is said to be one third of the ratio of  $A^{\frac{1}{m}}$  to  $B^{\frac{1}{m}}$ , and the ratio of  $A^{\frac{1}{m}}$  to  $B^{\frac{1}{m}}$  is said to be an  $m$ th part of the ratio of A to B.

17. Let the first ratio be  $a : 1$ , then  $a^2 : 1$ ,  $a^3 : 1$ , . . . .  $a^n : 1$ , are twice, thrice, . . . .  $n$  times the first ratio  $a : 1$ .  $n$ , the index of  $a$ , shows what multiple or part of the ratio  $a^n : 1$  the first ratio is. For this reason the indices 1, 2, 3, . . . .  $n$  are called measures of the ratios  $a^1 : 1$ ,  $a^2 : 1$ ,  $a^3 : 1$ , . . . .  $a^n : 1$ .

18. Proportion is an equality of ratios.

Thus, let  $\frac{A}{B} = m$ , and  $\frac{C}{D} = n$ ; then, if  $m = n$ , the two ratios are equal, that is, A has the same ratio to B which C has to D.

If  $m$  be greater than  $n$ , then A has to B a greater ratio than C has to D, and the four quantities are not proportional.

If  $m$  be less than  $n$ , then A has to B a less ratio than C has to D, and the four quantities are not proportional.

A proportion is thus expressed,  $A : B :: C : D$ , or  $A : B = C : D$ , or  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{D}$ , and is read A is to B as C is to D.

19. Hence four quantities are proportional when the first contains the second as often as the third contains the fourth.

NOTE. It will not always happen that the first quantity contains the second exactly, or the third contains the fourth; but the criterion of proportion is complete if the two fractions which consist of the terms of the two ratios be equal; that is,

when  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{D}$ , then  $A : B :: C : D$ .

If  $A = 10$ ,  $B = 5$ ,  $C = 8$ ,  $D = 4$ ; then  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{10}{5} = 2$ , and  $\frac{C}{D} = \frac{8}{4} = 2$ . Hence  $10 : 5 :: 8 : 4$ . Again,  $3 : 4 :: 9 : 12$ , for  $\frac{3}{4} = \frac{9}{12}$ .

The following is a general definition of proportion, whether the terms of the two ratios be commensurable or incommensurable.

20. Four quantities are proportional when any multiple of the first contains the second as often as the same multiple of the third contains the fourth.

Let  $A, B, C, D$  be four quantities, and  $m$  any number, and

let  $\frac{mA}{B} = \frac{mC}{D}$ ; then  $A : B :: C : D$ . Let  $A = 2, B = 3, C = 4,$

$D = 6,$  and  $m = 3$ ; then  $\frac{mA}{B} = \frac{6}{3} = 2,$  and  $\frac{mC}{D} = \frac{12}{6} = 2;$

therefore  $2 : 3 :: 4 : 6$ .

21. The terms  $A$  and  $D$  are called extremes, and the terms  $B$  and  $C$  are called means.

22. In any proportion the two antecedents, or the two consequents, are sometimes called homologous terms; and each antecedent with its consequent are called analogous terms.

23. If the sum or difference of two numbers be multiplied by any number, the product is equal to the sum or difference of the separate products of the first two numbers multiplied by the third.

Let  $A, B, C,$  be three numbers;  $(B+C)A = AB+AC,$  and  $(B-C)A = AB-AC.$

For the product  $AB$  is the same as each unit in  $B$  repeated  $A$  times, and the product  $AC$  is the same as each unit in  $C$  repeated  $A$  times; therefore the sum of the products  $AB+AC$  is equal to the units contained in  $B+C$  repeated  $A$  times, or  $AB+AC$  is equal to the sum of the numbers  $B$  and  $C$  multiplied by  $A$ .

Again, for the same reason, the difference between the products  $AB$  and  $AC,$  or  $AB-AC,$  must be equal to the difference of the units contained in  $B$  and  $C,$  or in  $B-C,$  repeated  $A$  times; that is,  $AB-AC$  is equal to the difference of the numbers  $B$  and  $C$  multiplied by  $A$ .

24. Cor. 1. Hence a number which measures (or divides) any two numbers will measure their sum and difference. Thus,  $A$  measures  $AB$  and  $AC,$  and also  $AB+AC$  and  $AB-AC.$

25. Cor. 2. Hence it is manifest that the first part of the proposition may be extended to more than two numbers, or that  $AB+AC+AD+\&c. = A(B+C+D+\&c.)$

26. If four quantities be proportional, the product of the extremes is equal to the product of the means.

If  $A : B :: C : D$ , then  $AD = BC$ .

For  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{D}$ ,  $\therefore AD = BC$ .

27. If the first quantity be to the second as the second to the third, the product of the extremes will be equal to the square of the mean.

If  $A : B :: B : C$ , then  $AC = B^2$ .

For  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{B}{C}$ ,  $\therefore AC = B^2$ .

28. Cor.  $B = \sqrt{AC}$ , that is, a geometrical mean proportional between two quantities is equal to the square root of their product.

29. If any three terms of a proportion be given, the fourth term may be found.

Let  $x$  be the unknown term, and let  $A : B :: C : x$ , then  $Ax = BC$  (26),  $\therefore x = \frac{BC}{A}$ . Again, let  $A : B :: x : D$ , then  $Bx = AD$ ,  $\therefore x = \frac{AD}{B}$ .

NOTE. This article contains the demonstration of the Rule of Three in Arithmetic.

30. Equimultiples of any quantities have the same ratio to one another which the quantities have; and like parts of any quantities have the same ratio to one another which the quantities have.

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be any quantities, and  $m$  any number;  $mA : mB :: A : B$ , and  $\frac{1}{m}A : \frac{1}{m}B :: A : B$ .

For  $A : B :: A : B$ ,  $\therefore \frac{A}{B} = \frac{A}{B}$ ,  $\therefore \frac{mA}{mB} = \frac{A}{B}$ , or  $mA : mB :: A : B$ .

Again, because  $A : B :: A : B$ ,  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{A}{B}$ ,  $\therefore \frac{\frac{1}{m}A}{\frac{1}{m}B} = \frac{A}{B}$ , or  $\frac{1}{m}A : \frac{1}{m}B :: A : B$ .

31. If four quantities be proportional, according as the first quantity is greater than, equal to, or less than the second, the third quantity is greater than, equal to, or less than the fourth.

Let  $A : B :: C : D$ , then  $AD = BC$  (26),  $\therefore$  if  $A$  be greater than  $B$ , then  $C$  is greater than  $D$ , if  $A=B$ , then  $C=D$ , and if  $A$  be less than  $B$ , then  $C$  is less than  $D$ .

32. If four quantities be proportional, according as the first quantity is greater than, equal to, or less than the third, the second quantity is greater than, equal to, or less than the fourth.

Let  $A : B :: C : D$ , then  $AD = BC$  (26),  $\therefore$  if  $A$  be greater than  $C$ , then  $B$  is greater than  $D$ , if  $A=C$ , then  $B=D$ , and if  $A$  be less than  $C$ , then  $B$  is less than  $D$ .

33. If the product of two quantities be equal to the product of two other quantities, these four quantities may be turned into a proportion by making the terms of one product the means, and the terms of the other product the extremes.

Let  $AD=BC$ , then  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{D}$ , that is,  $A : B :: C : D$ .

34. Quantities which have the same ratio to the same quantities are proportional.

Let  $A : B :: C : D$ , and  $C : D :: E : F$ , then

$A : B :: E : F$ . Because  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{D}$ , and  $\frac{C}{D} = \frac{E}{F}$ ,  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{E}{F}$ ,

or  $A : B :: E : F$ .

35. If four quantities be proportional, they are also proportional when taken inversely.

If  $A : B :: C : D$ , then  $B : A :: D : C$ . For  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{D}$ ,  $\therefore \frac{B}{A} = \frac{D}{C}$ , or  $B : A :: D : C$ .

36. If four quantities be proportional, they are also proportional when taken alternately.



If  $A : B :: C : D$ , then (by alternation)  $A : C :: B : D$ .  
For  $AD = BC$  (26),  $\therefore A : C :: B : D$  (33).

37. If four quantities be proportional, the sum of the first and second is to the second, as the sum of the third and fourth is to the fourth.

Let  $A : B :: C : D$ , then (by composition)  
 $A + B : B :: C + D : D$ .

For  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{D}$ , and  $\frac{B}{B} = \frac{D}{D}$ ;  $\therefore \frac{A+B}{B} = \frac{C+D}{D}$ , or

$$A + B : B :: C + D : D.$$

38. If four quantities be proportional, the difference between the first and second is to the second, as the difference between the third and fourth is to the fourth.

Let  $A : B :: C : D$ , then (by division)  
 $A - B : B :: C - D : D$ .

For  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{D}$ , and  $\frac{B}{B} = \frac{D}{D}$ ;  $\therefore \frac{A-B}{B} = \frac{C-D}{D}$ , or

$$A - B : B :: C - D : D.$$

39. If four quantities be proportional, the first is to the sum or difference of the first and second, as the third is to the sum or difference of the third and fourth.

Let  $A : B :: C : D$ , then (by conversion)  
 $A : A + B :: C : C + D$ , and  $A : A - B :: C : C - D$ .

For  $B : A :: D : C$  (35), or  $\frac{B}{A} = \frac{D}{C}$ , and  $\frac{A}{A} = \frac{C}{C}$ ;  $\therefore$

$$\frac{B+A}{A} = \frac{D+C}{C}, \therefore B+A : A :: D+C : C,$$

$$\therefore A : B+A :: C : D+C.$$

Cor.  $B+A : A :: D+C : C$  (35).

40. If four quantities be proportional, the sum of the first and second is to their difference, as the sum of the third and fourth is to their difference.

Let  $A : B :: C : D$ , then (by mixing)

$$A + B : A - B :: C + D : C - D.$$

For  $A + B : B :: C + D : D$  (37),

$$\therefore A + B : C + D :: B : D$$
 (36).

Again,  $A - B : B :: C - D : D$  (38),

$$\therefore A - B : C - D :: B : D.$$

C

Hence  $A + B : C + D :: A - B : C - D$  (34)  
 $\therefore A + B : A - B :: C + D : C - D$  (36).

41. If several quantities be proportional, as one of the antecedents is to its consequent, so is the sum of all the antecedents to the sum of all the consequents.

Let  $A : B :: C : D :: E : F :: G : H$ , &c. that is, let  
 $A : B :: C : D$ , and  $A : B :: E : F$ , &c.  
 then  $A : B :: A + C + E + G : B + D + F + H$ .  
 For  $AD = BC$  (26),  $AF = BE$ ,  $AH = BG$ ; also  $AB = BA$ ;  $\therefore$   
 $AB + AD + AF + AH = BA + BC + BE + BG$ , or  
 $A \times (B + D + F + H) = B \times (A + C + E + G)$  (25),  $\therefore$   
 $A : B :: A + C + E + G : B + D + F + H$  (33).

42. If there be several ranks of proportional quantities, the products of the corresponding terms will be proportional.

If  $A : B :: C : D$   
 and  $E : F :: G : H$   
 and  $I : K :: L : M$   
 then  $AEI : BFK :: CGL : DHM$ .  
 For  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{D}$ , &  $\frac{E}{F} = \frac{G}{H}$ , &  $\frac{I}{K} = \frac{L}{M}$ ;  $\therefore \frac{AEI}{BFK} = \frac{CGL}{DHM}$ ,  
 $\therefore AEI : BFK :: CGL : DHM$ .

43. If the same quantity occur in all the terms of a compound proportion, or in either of its two ratios, that quantity may be rejected, and the remaining terms will be proportional.

If  $A : B :: C : D$   
 and  $E : A :: F : C$   
 then  $AE : AB :: CF : CD$  (42)  
 $\therefore E : B :: F : D$  (30).  
 Again, let  $A : B :: C : D$   
 and  $B : E :: D : F$   
 and  $E : G :: F : H$   
 then  $ABE : BEG :: CDF : DFH$   
 $\therefore A : G :: C : H$ .

44. If four quantities be proportional, the like powers or roots of those quantities will be proportional.

If  $A : B :: C : D$ , then  $A^n : B^n :: C^n : D^n$ ,  $n$  being either a whole number or a fraction.

Because  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{D}$ ,  $\frac{A^2}{B^2} = \frac{C^2}{D^2}$ , or  $\frac{A^{\frac{1}{2}}}{B^{\frac{1}{2}}} = \frac{C^{\frac{1}{2}}}{D^{\frac{1}{2}}}$ ,

and  $\frac{A^n}{B^n} = \frac{C^n}{D^n}$ , that is,  $A^n : B^n :: C^n : D^n$ .

45. If several quantities, A, B, C, D, E, &c. be in continued proportion, the first quantity will be to the third as the square of the first is to the square of the second; the first quantity will be to the fourth as the cube of the first is to the cube of the second, &c. that is,

$A : C :: A^2 : B^2$ , or in the duplicate ratio of  $A : B$ ;  
 $A : D :: A^3 : B^3$ , or in the triplicate ratio of  $A : B$ ;  
 $A : E :: A^4 : B^4$ , or in the quadruplicate ratio of  $A : B$ ; &c. &c.

1. Let  $A : B :: B : C$ , then  $B^2 = AC$  (26),  $\therefore$   
 $A \times B^2 = A \times AC = A^2 \times C$ ,  $\therefore A : C :: A^2 : B^2$  (33).

2. Let  $A : B :: B : C :: C : D$ , then  $A : C :: A^2 : B^2$  (as above).  
 But  $C : D :: A : B$   
 $\therefore A : D :: A^3 : B^3$  (42 & 43).

3. Let  $A : B :: B : C :: C : D :: D : E$ ,  
 then  $A : D :: A^3 : B^3$  (as above).  
 But  $D : E :: A : B$   
 $\therefore A : E :: A^4 : B^4$ .

*Scholium.* The doctrine of Proportion in this tract is more general than that in Euclid's Elements. It includes the properties of both proportional numbers and of magnitudes. Euclid's Fifth Book contains the properties of proportional magnitudes only. The word *quantity*, employed above, denotes both numbers and magnitudes, or objects having extension.

This tract is chiefly taken from the treatises of Algebra of Wood and Bridge, and is the same in substance as is taught in foreign universities, instead of the Fifth Book of Euclid.



#### THE MOST USEFUL PROPERTIES OF PROPORTION.

If four quantities be proportional, the product of the extremes will be equal to the product of the means.

If the first quantity be to the second as the second to the third, the product of the extremes will be equal to the square of the mean.

If four quantities be proportional, according as the first quantity is equal to, greater, or less than the second, the third is equal to, greater, or less than the fourth; or according as the first quantity is equal to, greater, or less than the third, the second is equal to, greater, or less than the fourth.

If the product of two quantities be equal to the product of two other quantities, these four quantities may be turned into a proportion by making the terms of one product the means, and the terms of the other product the extremes.

Quantities which have the same ratio to the same quantities are proportional.

If four quantities be proportional, they are also proportional by inversion, alternation, composition, division, conversion, and mixing.

If several quantities be proportional, as one of the antecedents is to its consequent, so is the sum of all the antecedents to the sum of all the consequents.

If four quantities be proportional, and if the first and second be multiplied or divided by any quantity, and also the third and fourth, the resulting quantities will be proportional; or if the first and third be multiplied or divided by any quantity, and also the second and fourth, the resulting quantities will be proportional.

If there be several ranks of proportional quantities, the products of the corresponding terms will be proportional.

If four quantities be proportional, the like powers, and the like roots of those quantities will be proportional.

If three quantities be proportional, the first quantity will be to the third, as the square of the first is to the square of the second.

# ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY.

## BOOK I.\*

---

### EXPLANATION OF TERMS.

ED.

A **PROPOSITION** is something which is proposed either to be done, or to be demonstrated; and is either a theorem or a problem.

The words in which a proposition is expressed are called the *enunciation* of the proposition.

A *theorem* is something which is proposed to be demonstrated; or, it is a truth which becomes evident by means of a train of reasoning called a demonstration.

A *problem* is something which is proposed to be done; or, it is a question proposed, which requires a solution.

A *lemma* is something which is premised, or previously demonstrated, with a design to facilitate the demonstration of a theorem, or the solution of a problem.

A *corollary* is a consequent truth, or proposition deduced immediately from some preceding truth, proposition, or demonstration.

A *scholium* is a remark made upon one or more preceding propositions, and tending to show their connection, or restriction, or extension, or utility.

An *axiom* is a self evident proposition.

A *postulate* is something required to be done, which is so easy and evident that its practicability cannot be denied.

\*See Notes at the end of the volume.

## DEFINITIONS.

A. **GEOMETRY** is that science which treats of the properties and relations of space; or, it is that science whose object is the measure of extension. EDITOR.

B. Extension has three dimensions, length, breadth, and thickness. ED.

C. Magnitude is that kind of quantity which we conceive to be extended, and divisible into parts. There are three sorts of magnitudes, a line, a surface, and a solid. ED.

1. A Point is that which has position, but not magnitude.

2. A Line is length without breadth.

*Corollary.* The extremities of a line are points; and the intersection of two lines is a point.

3. A straight line is that which every where tends the same way. *See Note.* ED.

4. *Cor.* Hence a straight line is the least distance between two points. ED.

5. A curve line is that which continually changes its direction between its extreme points. ED.

6. A superficies, or surface, is that magnitude which has only length and breadth.

7. *Cor.* The extremities of a superficies are lines; and the intersection of one superficies with another is a line.

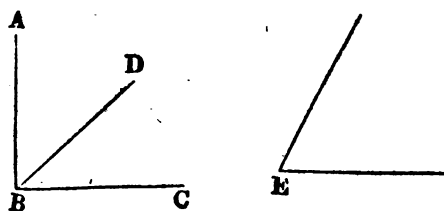
8. A plane superficies is that in which any two points being taken, the straight line which joins them lies wholly in that superficies.

9. If two straight lines diverge from the same point, the opening between them is called an angle. ED.

10. An angle is formed by the meeting, or intersection of two lines. The point of concurrence of the two lines is called the summit, vertex, or angular point. ED.

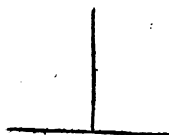
The magnitude of an angle does not depend on the length of the two lines which form it, but on the wideness of their opening. Thus, the angle ABC is greater than the angle DBC. ED.





When several angles are at one point **B**, any one of them is expressed by three letters, of which the letter at the vertex of the angle is put between the other two letters, and one of these two is somewhere on one of those straight lines, and the other on the other line: thus, the angle which is contained by the straight lines **AB**, **CB**, is named the angle **ABC**, or **CBA**; that which is contained by **AB**, **BD**, is named the angle **ABD**, or **DBA**; and that which is contained by **BD**, **CB**, is called the angle **DBC**, or **CBD**. If there be only one angle at a point, it may be expressed by a letter placed at that point, as the angle at **E**.

10. When a straight line standing on another straight line makes the adjacent angles equal to each other, each of the angles is called a right angle; and the straight line which stands on the other is called a perpendicular to it.



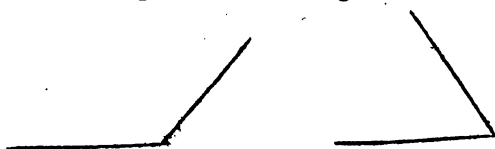
*Otherwise.* When a straight line standing on another straight line does not incline to either side of it, the former line is said to be perpendicular to the latter; and the two angles which it forms with the latter are called right angles.

Ed.

11. *Cor.* Hence all right angles are equal to one another. For they are formed by straight lines standing perpendicularly on other straight lines; and since they are formed exactly in the same manner they are necessarily equal to one another,

Ed.

12. An obtuse angle is that which is greater than a right angle.



**D**

13. An acute angle is that which is less than a right angle.

*Note.* An angle which is either acute or obtuse is often called an oblique angle. Ed.

14. If two lines be in the same plane, and do not meet, though produced ever so far both ways, they are called parallel lines.

---

*Otherwise.* If two lines be in the same plane, and have no inclination to each other, they are called parallel lines. Ed.

15. *Cor.* 1. Hence parallel lines are equidistant. For they neither accede to, nor recede from each other. Ed.

16. *Cor.* 2. If two straight lines be perpendicular to the same straight line, they are parallel to each other. For they have no inclination to each other. Ed.

17. A figure is that which is enclosed by one or more boundaries.

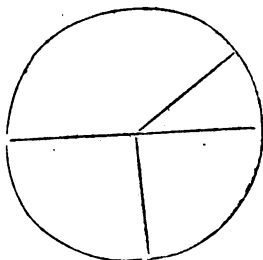
18. If a finite straight line be supposed to revolve in the same plane, about one of its extremities, which is fixed, until it arrive at the place from which it began to move, the surface described by the revolving line is called a circle. Ed.

19. The fixed point about which the line revolves is called the centre of the circle; the revolving line is called a radius; and the curve line described by the moveable extremity of the revolving line is called the circumference of the circle. Ed.

20. *Cor.* Hence a circle is a plane figure contained by a curve line, or circumference, and all straight lines drawn from the centre to the circumference are equal to one another.

21. A diameter of a circle is a straight line drawn through the centre, and terminated both ways by the circumference; and a radius is a straight line drawn from the centre to the circumference.

22. A semicircle is the figure contained by a diameter and the part of the circumference cut off by the diameter.



*Note.* The circumference of a circle is often called a circle; and the arch of a semicircle is often called a semicircle. Ed.

23. Rectilineal figures are those which are contained by straight lines.

24. Trilateral figures, or triangles, are contained by three straight lines.

25. Quadrilateral figures by four straight lines.

26. Multilateral figures, or polygons, by more than four straight lines.

27. Of three-sided figures, an equilateral triangle is that which has three equal sides.

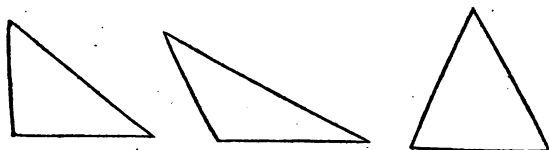
28. An isosceles triangle is that which has two sides equal.



29. A scalene triangle is that which has three unequal sides.

30. A right angled triangle is that which has a right angle.

31. An obtuse angled triangle is that which has an obtuse angle.

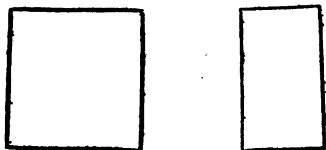


32. An acute angled triangle is that which has three acute angles.

*Note.* A triangle which has no right angle is often called an oblique angled triangle.

Ed.

33. Of quadrilateral figures, a square is that which has one right angle, and all its sides equal.

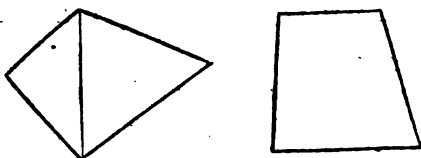


34. A rectangle is that which has all its angles right angles, but has not all its sides equal.

35. A parallelogram is that which has its two opposite sides parallel.



36. A trapezium is a four-sided figure, of which the opposite sides are not parallel; and the diagonal is the straight line joining two of its opposite angles. Ed.



37. A straight line joining two opposite angles of any quadrilateral figure, or two opposite angles of any polygon, is called a diagonal. Ed.

38. In a right angled triangle the side opposite to the right angle is called the hypotenuse; and of the other two sides one is called the base and the other the perpendicular, according to the position in which the triangle is described. Also, the two sides are sometimes called the legs. Ed.

39. The altitude of any figure is the straight line drawn from its vertex perpendicular to the base.

40. That part of Geometry which treats of the measurement and position of plane figures, of straight lines, and of rectilineal angles, is called Plane Geometry.

### POSTULATES.

1. LET it be granted that a straight line may be drawn from any one point to any other point.

2. That a terminated straight line may be produced to any length in a straight line.

3. That a circle may be described from any centre, at any distance from that centre.

4. That a straight line which meets one of two parallel straight lines may be produced till it meet the other. Ed.

5. If there be two equal straight lines, and if any figure whatever be constituted on one of them, a figure exactly similar to it may be constituted on the other.

### AXIOMS.

1. THINGS which are equal to the same thing are equal to one another. Also things which are equal to equal things are equal to one another.

2. If equals be added to equals, the wholes are equal.

3. If equals be taken from equals, the remainders are equal.

4. If equals be added to unequals, the wholes are unequal.

5. If equals be taken from unequals, the remainders are unequal.

6. Things which are doubles of the same thing are equal to one another.

7. Things which are halves of the same thing are equal to one another.

8. Magnitudes which coincide with one another, that is, which exactly fill the same space, are equal to one another.

9. The whole is greater than its part.

A. The whole is equal to all its parts taken together. **ED.**

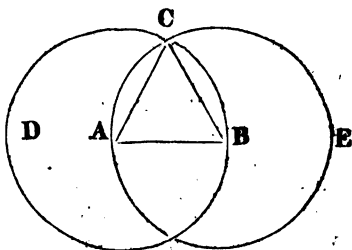
B. It is impossible for the same thing to have, at the same time, two qualities which are inconsistent with each other. **ED.**

## PROPOSITION I. PROBLEM.

To describe an equilateral triangle on a given finite straight line. *See Note.*

Let  $AB$  be the given straight line; it is required to describe an equilateral triangle on it.

From the centre  $A$ , at the distance  $AB$ , describe the circumference of the circle  $BCD$  (3 Postulate); and from the centre  $B$ , at the distance  $BA$ , describe the circumference of the circle  $ACE$ . Then, because the circumference of each circle passes through the centre of the other, the two circles will cut each other in some point  $C$ . From the point  $C$  draw the straight lines  $CA$ ,  $CB$ , to the points  $A$ ,  $B$  (1 Post.);  $ABC$  will be an equilateral triangle.



Because the point  $A$  is the centre of the circle  $BCD$ ,  $AC$  is equal to  $AB$  (20 Definition); and because the point  $B$  is the centre of the circle  $ACE$ ,  $BC$  is equal to  $BA$ : therefore  $CA$  and  $CB$  are each of them equal to  $AB$ . But things which are equal to the same thing are equal to one another (1 Axiom); therefore  $CA$  is equal to  $CB$ ; wherefore  $CA$ ,  $AB$ ,  $BC$  are equal to one another; and they form a triangle  $ABC$ ; therefore the triangle  $ABC$  is equilateral; and it is described on the given straight line  $AB$ . Which was required to be done.\*

## PROPOSITION II. PROBLEM.

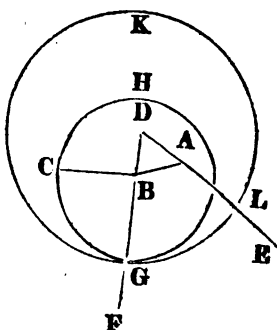
From a given point to draw a straight line equal to a given straight line.

Let  $A$  be the given point, and  $BC$  the given straight line; it is required to draw from  $A$  a straight line equal to  $BC$ .

---

\* This demonstration is full and minute.

Join the points A, B, and on AB describe the equilateral triangle DAB (Prop. 1). From the centre B, at the distance BC, describe the circle CGH (3 Post.), and produce DB to G (2 Post.). From the centre D, at the distance DG, describe the circle GKL, and produce DA to L. AL will be equal to BC.



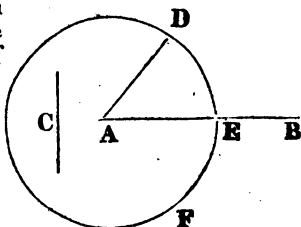
Because the point B is the centre of the circle CGH, BC is equal to BG (20 Def.); and because D is the centre of the circle GKL, DL is equal to DG. But DA, BD, parts of them, are equal (27 Def.); therefore the remainder AL is equal to the remainder BG (3 Ax.). But BC is equal to BG; wherefore AL and BC are each of them equal to BG; therefore the line AL is equal to BC (1 Ax.); and AL is drawn from the given point A, as was to be done.

### PROPOSITION III. PROBLEM.

From the greater of two given straight lines to cut off a part equal to the less.

Let AB and C be two given straight lines, whereof AB is the greater. It is required to cut off from AB a part equal to C.

From the point A draw the straight line AD equal to C (Prop. 2.); and from the centre A, at the distance AD, describe the circle DEF, cutting AB in E (3 Post.). Then AE is equal to C.



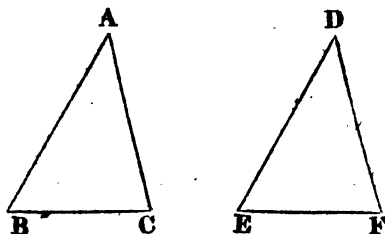
Because A is the centre of the circle DEF, AE is equal to AD (20 Def.). But the straight line C is equal to AD; whence AE and C are each of them equal to AD; wherefore AE is equal to C (1 Ax.). Therefore, from AB, the greater of two straight lines, a part AE has been cut off equal to C, the less. Which was to be done.

### PROPOSITION IV. THEOREM.

If two triangles have two sides of one triangle equal to two sides of the other, each to each; and have also the angles contained by those sides equal to each

other; their third sides will be equal; and their surfaces will be equal; and their other angles to which the equal sides are opposite will be equal, each to each.\*

Let  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  be two triangles, which have the side  $AB$  equal to  $DE$ , and  $AC$  to  $DF$ ; and the angle  $A$  equal to  $D$ ; then the base  $BC$  will be equal to  $EF$ , and the triangle  $ABC$  to  $DEF$ ; and the other angles, to which the equal sides are opposite, will be equal, each to each, namely, the angle  $B$  to  $E$ , and the angle  $C$  to  $F$ .



If the triangle  $ABC$  be applied to the triangle  $DEF$ , so that the point  $A$  may be on  $D$ , and the straight line  $AB$  on  $DE$ , the point  $B$  will coincide with  $E$ , because  $AB$  is equal to  $DE$ ; and because  $AB$  coincides with  $DE$ , and the angle  $A$  is equal to  $D$ ,  $AC$  will coincide with  $DF$ ; wherefore also the point  $C$  will coincide with  $F$ , because  $AC$  is equal to  $DF$ . But the point  $B$  coincides with  $E$ ; wherefore the base  $BC$  will coincide with  $EF$ , and will be equal to it. Therefore the whole triangle  $ABC$  will coincide with the whole triangle  $DEF$ , and be equal to it; and the remaining angles of one triangle will coincide with the remaining angles of the other, and be equal to them, namely, the angle  $B$  to  $E$ , and the angle  $C$  to  $F$ .

Therefore, if two triangles have two sides of one triangle equal to two sides of the other, each to each, and have also the angles contained by those sides equal to each other; their bases will be equal, and their surfaces will be equal, and their other angles to which the equal sides are opposite will be equal, each to each. Which was to be demonstrated.

---

\* *Shorter enunciation, thus:*—If two sides of one triangle be equal to two sides of another, each to each, and if the angles contained by those sides be also equal, the triangles will be equal in all respects.

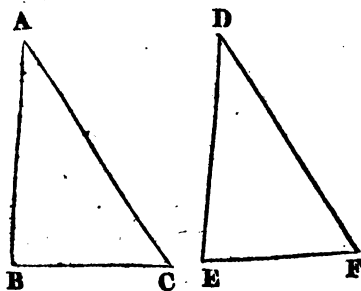


PROPOSITION A. THEOREM.

*This is Prop. 26.*

If two triangles have two angles of one triangle equal to two angles of the other, each to each, and have also the sides between those angles equal to each other; then will the other two sides be equal, each to each, and the third angle of one triangle to the third angle of the other.

Let  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  be two triangles which have the angles  $B$ ,  $C$  equal to the angles  $E$ ,  $F$ , each to each, and the side  $BC$  equal to  $EF$ ; then the other sides will be equal, each to each, namely,  $AB$  to  $DE$ , and  $AC$  to  $DF$ ; and the third angle  $A$  to the third angle  $D$ .



Let the triangle  $ABC$  be applied to  $DEF$ , so that the side  $BC$  may coincide with  $EF$ ; then the side  $AB$  will lie on  $DE$ , because the angle  $B$  is equal to  $E$ , and the side  $AC$  will lie on  $DF$ , because the angle  $C$  is equal to  $F$ . Therefore the point  $A$  where  $BA$ ,  $CA$  meet, will fall on the angular point  $D$ . Consequently the side  $AB$  coincides with  $DE$ ,  $AC$  with  $DF$ , the angle  $A$  with  $D$ , and the triangle  $ABC$  with  $DEF$ . Therefore, if two triangles &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. 1. if two angles of a triangle be equal to each other, the sides opposite to them are equal.

For suppose the two angles at the base of each triangle to become equal to each other, then the four angles at the bases of both triangles will be equal to one another; therefore the sides opposite to them will be equal to one another by the proposition. E. D.

E

**Cor. 2.** If two triangles be mutually equiangular, and have two corresponding sides equal to each other, the other corresponding sides will be equal, and the triangles will be equal in all respects. ED.

### PROPOSITION V. THEOREM.

**IF** two sides of a triangle be equal, the angles opposite to them are equal.

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle, of which the side  $AB$  is equal to  $AC$ ; the angle  $ABC$  is equal to  $ACB$ .

Produce  $AB$ ,  $AC$  to  $D$  and  $E$ . In  $BD$  take any point  $F$ , and from  $AE$ , the greater, cut off  $AG$  equal to  $AF$ , the less (3. 1.), and join  $FC$ ,  $GB$ .

The side  $AF$  is equal to  $AG$ , and  $AB$  to  $AC$ , and the angle  $A$  is common to the two triangles  $AFC$ ,  $AGB$ ; therefore the base  $FC$  is equal to  $GB$  (4. 1.), and the angle  $ACF$  to  $ABG$ , and the angle  $AFC$  to  $AGB$ .

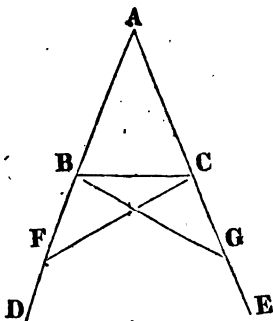
Because  $AF$  is equal to  $AG$ , and the part  $AB$  to  $AC$ , the remainder  $BF$  is equal to the remainder  $CG$  (3 Ax.)

In the triangles  $BFC$ ,  $CGB$ , the side  $BF$  is equal to  $CG$ , and  $FC$  to  $GB$ , and the angle  $BFC$  to  $CGB$ ; therefore the angle  $BCF$  is equal to  $CBG$  (4. 1.).

Now, since it has been proved that the angle  $ABG$  is equal to  $ACF$ , and the part  $CBG$  to the part  $BCF$ , the remaining angle  $ABC$  is equal to the remaining angle  $ACB$  (3 Ax.). Therefore, the angles at the base &c. Q. E. D.\*

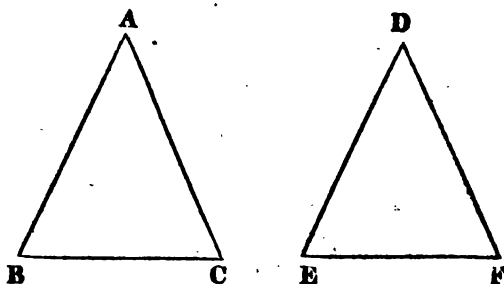
*Otherwise.* If the side  $AB$  be equal to  $AC$ , the angle  $ABC$  is equal to  $ACB$ . For no reason can be assigned that the angle  $ABC$  should be either greater or less than  $ACB$ ; therefore the angles  $ABC$ ,  $ACB$  are equal. Q. E. D. ED.

*Otherwise.* This proposition is merely a corollary to the fourth.




---

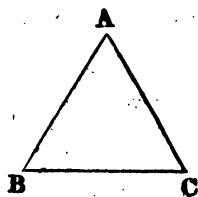
\**Quod erat demonstrandum*, which was to be demonstrated.



For, let the sides  $AB, AC$  be equal to each other, and also the sides  $DE, DF$  be equal; then the four sides  $AB, AC, DE, DF$ , are equal to one another; therefore the four angles subtended by those four sides are equal to one another (4. 1.). Therefore the two angles at the base of each triangle are equal to each other. Q. E. D. Ed.

Cor. Hence every equilateral triangle is also equiangular.

Let  $ABC$  be an equilateral triangle; then because the two sides  $AB, AC$  are equal, the angles  $B$  and  $C$  at the base are equal. Again, because the sides  $BA, BC$  are equal, the angles  $A$  and  $C$  at the base are equal. Hence each of the angles  $B$  and  $A$  is equal to  $C$ ; therefore they are equal to each other (1 Ax.). Wherefore the three angles of the triangle  $ABC$  are equal, that is, the triangle  $ABC$  is equiangular. Ed.

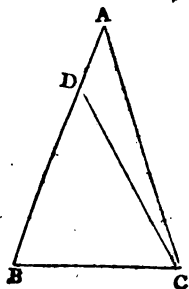


## PROPOSITION VI. THEOREM.\*

If two angles of a triangle be equal, the sides opposite to them are equal. *See Note.*

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle having the angle  $B$  equal to  $C$ ; the side  $AB$  is also equal to  $AC$ .

For if  $AB$  be not equal to  $AC$ , one of them is greater than the other. Let  $AB$  be the greater, and from it cut off  $DB$  equal to  $AC$ , the less (3. 1.), and join  $DC$ . In the triangles  $DBC$ ,  $ACB$ ,  $DB$  is equal to  $AC$ , and  $BC$  common to both, and the angle  $B$  is equal to  $ACB$  (by the supposition); therefore the triangle  $DBC$  is equal to  $ACB$  (4. 1.), the less to the greater, which is absurd. Therefore the side  $AB$  is not greater than  $AC$ . In the same manner it may be proved that  $AB$  is not less than  $AC$ . Consequently  $AB$  is equal to  $AC$ . Therefore, if two angles &c. Q. E. D.



*Otherwise.* If the angle  $B$  be equal to  $C$ , the side  $AB$  is equal to  $AC$ . For no reason can be assigned that the side  $AB$  should be either greater or less than  $AC$ ; therefore the sides  $AB$   $AC$  are equal. Q. E. D. Ed.

Cor. Hence every equiangular triangle is also equilateral.

Let  $ABC$  be an equiangular triangle (figure to Cor. Prop. V); then because the angle  $B$  is equal to  $C$ , the side  $AC$  is equal to  $AB$ ; and because the angle  $A$  is equal to  $C$ , the side  $BC$  is equal to  $AB$ . Hence each of the sides  $AC$  and  $BC$  is equal to  $AB$ ; therefore they are equal to each other (1 Ax.). Therefore the three sides of the triangle  $ABC$  are equal, that is the triangle  $ABC$  is equilateral. Ed.

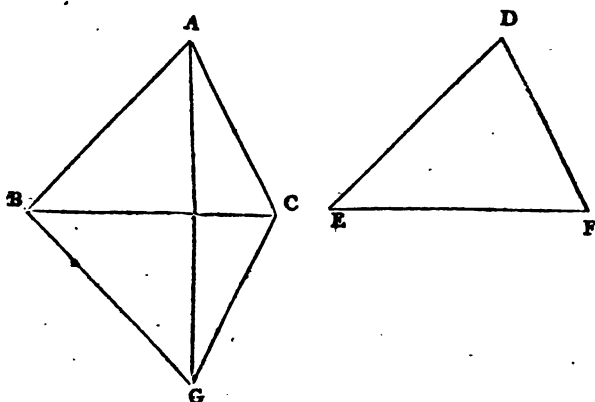
---

\* This is the converse of Proposition V, and may be inferred from it without demonstration.

PROPOSITION VIII. THEOREM

If two triangles have the three sides of one triangle equal to the three sides of the other, each to each, they are equal in all respects.

Let  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  be two triangles having the side  $AB$  equal to  $DE$ , and  $AC$  to  $DF$ , and  $BC$  to  $EF$ ; the triangle  $ABC$  is equal to  $DEF$ , the angle  $A$  to  $D$ , the angle  $B$  to  $E$ , and the angle  $C$  to  $F$ .



Let the triangle  $DEF$  be applied to the triangle  $ABC$ , so that their longest sides,  $BC$ ,  $EF$ , may coincide; and let  $BGC$  represent the triangle  $DEF$  in an inverted position. Join  $AG$ . Because the sides  $GB$  and  $AB$  are each equal, by hypothesis, to  $DE$ , they are equal to each other; therefore the triangle  $ABG$  is isosceles, wherefore the angle  $BAG$  is equal to  $BGA$  (5. 1.).

In the same manner it may be shown that the side  $AC$  is equal to  $CG$ , and the angle  $CAG$  to  $CGA$ . Therefore the two angles  $BAG$ ,  $CAG$  together are equal to the two angles  $BGA$ ,  $CGA$  together; that is, the whole angle  $BAC$  is equal to the whole angle  $BGC$ . But the angle  $BGC$  is, by hypothesis, equal to the angle  $EDF$ ; therefore also the angle  $BAC$  is equal to  $EDF$ . Hence the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  are equal in all respects (4. 1.). Wherefore, if two triangles &c. Q. E. D.

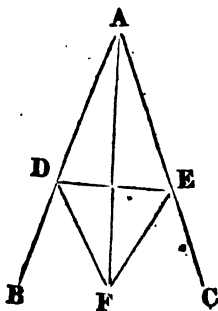
## PROPOSITION IX. PROBLEM.

To bisect a given rectilineal angle; that is, to divide it into two equal angles.

Let  $BAC$  be the given rectilineal angle; it is required to bisect it.

Take any point  $D$  in  $AB$ , and from  $AC$  cut off  $AE$  equal to  $AD$  (3. 1.); join  $DE$ , and on it describe an equilateral triangle  $DEF$  (1. 1.); join  $AF$ ; then the straight line  $AF$  bisects the angle  $BAC$ .

Because  $AD$  is equal to  $AE$ , and  $AF$  is common to the two triangles  $DAF$ ,  $EAF$ , and  $DF$  is equal to  $EF$ ; the angle  $DAF$  is equal to  $EAF$  (8. 1.); wherefore the angle  $BAC$  is bisected by the straight line  $AF$ . Which was to be done.



*Scholium.* In the same manner may each of the angles  $BAF$ ,  $CAF$  be bisected. Therefore by successive subdivisions an angle may be divided into four, eight, sixteen, &c. equal parts. Ed.

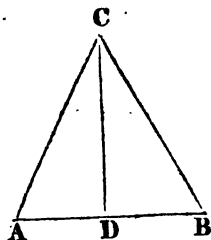
## PROPOSITION X. PROBLEM.

To bisect a given finite straight line; that is, to divide it into two equal parts.

Let  $AB$  be the given straight line; it is required to divide it into two equal parts.

On  $AB$  describe an equilateral triangle  $ABC$  (1. 1.), and bisect the angle  $ACB$  by the straight line  $CD$  (9. 1.);  $AB$  is bisected in the point  $D$ .

Because  $AC$  is equal to  $CB$ , and  $CD$  is common to the two triangles  $ACD$ ,  $BCD$ , and the angle  $ACD$  is equal to  $BCD$ ; the base  $AD$  is equal to  $DB$  (4. 1.); therefore the straight line  $AB$  is divided into two equal parts in the point  $D$ .



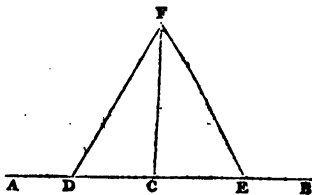
Cor. If a straight line bisect the vertical angle of an equilateral or an isosceles triangle, it will also bisect the base at right angles. For the triangles  $ACD$ ,  $BCD$  are equal in all respects.

### PROPOSITION XI. PROBLEM.

To draw a straight line at right angles to a given straight line, from a given point in the same.

Let  $AB$  be a given straight line, and  $C$  a point given in  $AB$ ; it is required to draw a straight line from  $C$  at right angles to  $AB$ .

Take any point  $D$  in  $AC$ , and make  $CE$  equal to  $CD$  (3. 1.); on  $DE$  describe the equilateral triangle  $DFE$  (1. 1.), and join  $FC$ ; the straight line  $FC$ , drawn from the given point  $C$ , is at right angles to the given straight line  $AB$ .



Because  $DC$  is equal to  $CE$ , and  $FC$  is common to the two triangles  $DCF$ ,  $ECF$ , and the side  $DF$  is equal to  $EF$ ; the angle  $DCF$  is equal to  $ECF$  (8. 1.); and they are adjacent angles; therefore each of the angles  $DCF$ ,  $ECF$ , is a right angle (10 Def.). Wherefore from the given point  $C$ , in the given straight line  $AB$ ,  $FC$  has been drawn at right angles to  $AB$ .

*Note.* If the given point  $C$  be at or near the end of the given line  $AB$ , then  $AB$  must be produced on the side of the point  $C$ .

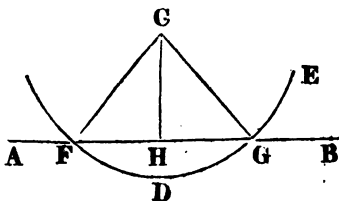
Ed.

## PROPOSITION XII. PROBLEM.

To draw a straight line perpendicular to a given straight line of unlimited length, from a given point without the line.

Let  $AB$  be a given straight line, which may be produced to any length both ways, and let  $C$  be a given point without the line; it is required to draw from  $C$  a straight line perpendicular to  $AB$ .

Take any point  $D$  on the other side of  $AB$ , and from the center  $C$ , with the radius  $CD$ , describe the circle  $EGF$  meeting  $AB$  in  $F$  and  $G$  (3 Post.); bisect  $FG$  in  $H$  (10. 1.), and draw  $CF$ ,  $CH$ ,  $CG$ ; the straight line  $CH$ , drawn from the given point  $C$ , is perpendicular to the given straight line  $AB$ .



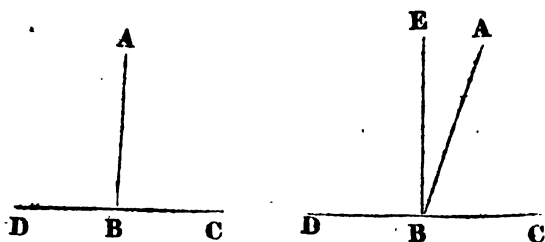
Because  $FH$  is equal to  $HG$ , and  $HC$  is common to the two triangles  $FHC$ ,  $GHC$ , and the side  $CF$  is equal to  $CG$  (20 Def.); the angle  $CHF$  is equal to  $CHG$  (8. 1.); and they are adjacent angles; therefore each of them is a right angle, and  $CH$  is perpendicular to  $FG$  (10 Def.). Therefore from the given point  $C$  a perpendicular  $CH$  has been drawn to the given straight line  $AB$ .

## PROPOSITION XIII. THEOREM.

The two angles which one straight line makes with another, on one side of it, are together equal to two right angles.

Let the straight line  $AB$  make with  $CD$ , on one side of  $CD$ , the angles  $ABC$ ,  $ABD$ ; these are together equal to two right angles.





If the angle  $ABC$  be equal to  $ABD$ , each of them is a right angle (Def. 10.). But, if not, from the point  $B$  draw  $BE$  at right angles to  $CD$  (11. 1.); then the angles  $CBE$ ,  $EBD$  are two right angles. The angle  $DBA$  is equal to the two angles  $DBE$ ,  $EBA$ . To these equals add the angle  $CBA$ , then the two angles  $DBA$ ,  $CBA$  will be equal to the three angles  $DBE$ ,  $EBA$ ,  $ABC$ . Now  $DBE$  is a right angle, and the two angles  $EBA$ ,  $ABC$  are together equal to the right angle  $CBE$ . Therefore the sum of the three angles  $DBE$ ,  $EBA$ ,  $ABC$  is equal to two right angles. Consequently the sum of the two angles  $DBA$ ,  $CBA$  is also equal to two right angles. Wherefore, the angles &c. Q. E. D. LEGENBRE.

*Otherwise.* The construction remaining, the angles  $CBE$ ,  $EBD$  are right angles. But the angle  $ABD$  is greater than  $EBD$  by the angle  $ABE$ , and the angle  $ABC$  is less than  $EBC$  by the same angle  $ABE$ . Therefore the angles  $ABD$ ,  $ABC$  are together equal to the angles  $CBE$ ,  $EBD$ , that is, to two right angles. Wherefore, the angles &c. Q. E. D. En.

Cor. 1. All the angles which any number of straight lines make with another straight line at the same point, and on the same side of the line, are together equal to two right angles.

For their sum is equal to the sum of the two angles  $DBA$ ,  $CBA$ . En.

Cor. 2. If two straight lines cut each other, the four angles which they make at the point of intersection are together equal to four right angles.

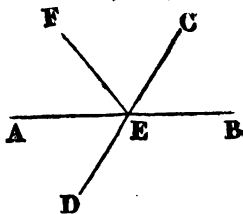
For the two angles on each side of  $AB$  are together equal to two right angles, therefore the four angles on both sides of  $AB$  are together equal to four right angles. En.



Cor. 3. All the angles made by any number of straight lines, which intersect or meet one another in one point, are together equal to four right angles.

F

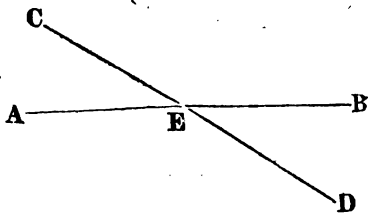
For all the angles made on one side of a straight line  $AB$  passing through the point of concurrence  $E$  of any number of straight lines, are together equal to two right angles, by Cor. 1; therefore all the angles made at the point of concurrence of the lines on both sides of  $AB$  are together equal to four right angles.  $Q. E. D.$



### PROPOSITION XV. THEOREM.

If two straight lines cut each other, the opposite angles will be equal.

Let the two straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  cut each other in the point  $E$ ; the angle  $AEC$  will be equal to  $DEB$ , and the angle  $CEB$  to  $AED$ . For the angles  $CEA$ ,  $AED$  which the straight line  $AE$  makes with  $CD$ , are together equal to two right angles (13. 1.); and the angles  $AED$ ,  $DEB$ , which the straight line  $DE$  makes with  $AB$ , are together equal to two right angles; therefore the two angles  $CEA$ ,  $AED$  are together equal to the two angles  $AED$ ,  $DEB$ . Take away the common angle  $AED$ , and the remaining angles  $CEA$ ,  $DEB$  are equal (3 Ax.). In the same manner it can be demonstrated that the angles  $CEB$ ,  $AED$  are equal. Therefore, if two straight lines &c.  $Q. E. D.$



*Otherwise.* This proposition is obvious, for the straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  have the same inclination to each other on both sides of the point of intersection  $E$ ; therefore the opposite angles  $AEC$ ,  $DEB$  are equal, and also the opposite angles  $CEB$ ,  $AED$  are equal.  $Q. E. D.$   $Q. E. D.$

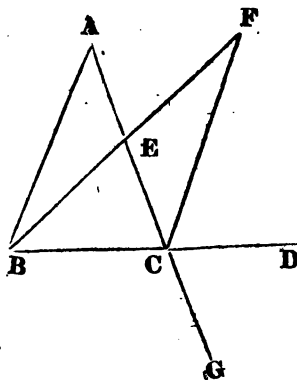
PROPOSITION XVI. THEOREM.\*

If one side of a triangle be produced, the exterior angle will be greater than either of the interior and opposite angles.

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and let one side  $BC$  be produced to  $D$ ; the exterior angle  $ACD$  is greater than either of the interior opposite angles  $CBA$ ,  $BAC$ .

Bisect  $AC$  in  $E$  (10. 1.); join  $BE$ , and produce it to  $F$ ; make  $EF$  equal to  $BE$ , and join  $FC$ .

Because  $AE$  is equal to  $EC$ , and  $BE$  to  $EF$ , the two sides  $AE$ ,  $EB$  are equal to  $CE$ ,  $EF$ , each to each; and the angle  $AEB$  is equal to the angle  $CEF$  (15. 1.); therefore the base  $AB$  is equal to the base  $CF$  (4. 1.), and the angle  $BAE$  is equal to the angle  $ECF$ . But the angle  $ECD$  is greater than the angle  $ECF$ ; therefore the angle  $ECD$ , that is,  $ACD$ , is greater than  $BAC$ .



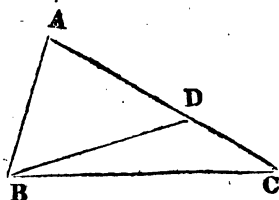
If the side  $AC$  be produced to  $G$ , and  $BC$  be bisected, it may be demonstrated in the same manner, that the angle  $BCG$  is greater than the angle  $ABC$ . But the angle  $BCG$  is equal to the vertical angle  $ACD$  (15. 1.). Therefore the angle  $ACD$  is greater than the angle  $ABC$ . Therefore, if one side &c. Q. E. D.

PROPOSITION XVIII. THEOREM.

The greater side of every triangle subtends the greater angle, or has the greater angle opposite to it.

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle, of which the side  $AC$  is greater than  $AB$ ; the angle  $ABC$  is also greater than  $BCA$ .

From  $AC$  cut off  $AD$  equal to  $AB$  and join  $BD$ . The exterior angle  $ADB$  of the triangle  $BDC$  is greater than the interior and opposite



\* This proposition serves to demonstrate propositions 17, 18, and 27; but is otherwise useless.

angle DCB (16. 1.). But ADB is equal to ABD (5. 1.), because the side AB is equal to AD; therefore the angle ABD is also greater than ACB; wherefore much more is the angle ABC greater than ACB. Therefore, the greater side &c. Q. E. D.

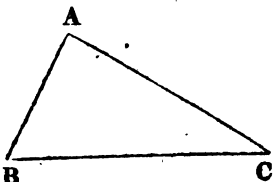
Cor. Hence, by an obvious and necessary consequence, the greater angle of every triangle is subtended by the greater side. Ed.

### PROPOSITION XIX. THEOREM.

The greater angle of every triangle is subtended by the greater side, or has the greater side opposite to it,

Let ABC be a triangle, of which the angle B is greater than C; the side AC is also greater than AB.

For If AC be not greater than AB, it must either be equal to or less than AB. But AC is not equal to AB, because then the angle B would be equal to C (5. 1.); but it is not; therefore AC is not equal to AB. Nor is AC less than AB, because then the angle B would be less than C (18. 1.); but it is not; therefore AC is not less than AB. And it has been shown that AC is not equal to AB; therefore AC is greater than AB. Wherefore, the greater angle &c. Q. E. D.



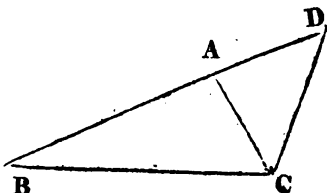
### PROPOSITION XX. THEOREM.

Any two sides of a triangle are together greater than the third side.

Let ABC be a triangle; any two sides of it are together greater than the third side, namely, the sides BA, AC are greater than the side BC; and AB, BC greater than AC; and BC, CA greater than AB.

Produce BA to the point D, and make AD equal to AC (3. 1.), and join DC.

Because DA is equal to AC, the angle D is equal to ACD (5. 1.). But the angle BCD is greater than ACD; therefore BCD is greater than ADC; B therefore the side DB is great-



er than  $BC$  (19. 1.). But  $DB$  is equal to  $BA$  and  $AC$  together; therefore  $BA$  and  $AC$  together are greater than  $BC$ . In the same manner it may be proved that the sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$  are together greater than  $AC$ ; and  $BC$ ,  $CA$  greater than  $AB$ . Therefore, any two sides &c. Q. E. D.

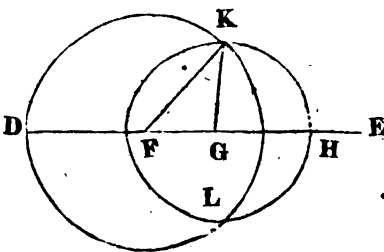
*Otherwise.* Because a straight line is the least distance between two points (4 Def.), the straight line  $BC$  is less than the two straight lines  $BA$ ,  $AC$  together, or  $BA$  and  $AC$  are together greater than  $BC$ . Ed.

### PROPOSITION XXII. PROBLEM.

To construct a triangle of which the sides shall be equal to three given straight lines; but any two of these lines must be greater than the third (20. 1.).

Let  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  be the three given straight lines, of which any two are greater than the third, namely,  $A$  and  $B$  greater than  $C$ ;  $A$  and  $C$  greater than  $B$ ; and  $B$  and  $C$  greater than  $A$ . It is required to make a triangle, of which the sides shall be equal to  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ , each to each.

Take a straight line  $DE$  unlimited toward  $D$  and  $E$ , and let  $F$  be any point in it; make  $DF$  equal to  $A$  (3. 1.),  $FG$  to  $B$ , and  $GH$  to  $C$ . Therefore any two of the three straight lines  $DF$ ,  $FG$ ,  $GH$  are together greater than the third. From the centre  $F$  at the distance  $FD$ , describe the circle  $DKL$ ; and from the centre  $G$  at the distance  $GH$ , describe another circle  $HLK$ .



$A$  \_\_\_\_\_  
 $B$  \_\_\_\_\_  
 $C$  \_\_\_\_\_

The circle  $DLK$  will cut  $FH$ , because  $FD$  is less than  $FG$  and  $GH$ , that is, than  $FH$ ; and the circle  $HLK$  will cut  $GD$ , because  $GH$  is less than  $GF$  and  $FD$ , that is, than  $GD$ . The two circles  $DLK$ ,  $HLK$  will cut each other, because their radii  $DF$  and  $GH$  are together greater than  $FG$  the distance between their centres. Let them intersect each other in  $K$ , and let  $KF$ ,  $KG$  be joined. The triangle  $KFG$  has its sides equal to the three straight lines  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ .

Because the point  $F$  is the centre of the circle  $DKL$ ,  $FD$  is equal to  $FK$  (20 Def.). But  $FD$  is equal to  $A$ ; therefore  $FK$  is equal to  $A$ . Again because  $G$  is the centre of the circle  $LKH$ ,  $GH$  is equal to  $GK$ . But  $GH$  is equal to  $C$ ; therefore  $GK$  is equal to  $C$ . Now  $FG$  is equal to  $B$ . Therefore the three lines  $KF$ ,  $FG$ ,  $GK$  are equal to the three lines  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ , each to each; therefore the triangle  $KFG$  has its three sides  $KF$ ,  $FG$ ,  $GK$  equal to the three given lines  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ . Which was to be done.

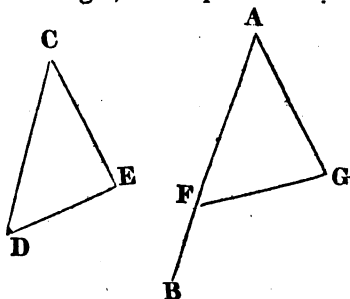
### PROPOSITION XXIII. PROBLEM.

At a given point in a given straight line to make a rectilineal angle equal to a given rectilineal angle.

Let  $AB$  be the given straight line, and  $A$  the given point in it, and  $DCE$  the given rectilineal angle; it is required to make an angle at the point  $A$ , in the line  $AB$ , which shall be equal to the angle  $C$ .

In  $CD$ ,  $CE$  take any points  $D$ ,  $E$ , and join  $DE$ ; make the triangle  $AFG$ , the sides of which shall be equal to the three lines  $CD$ ,  $DE$ ,  $CE$  (Prop. 22.), so that  $CD$  be equal to  $AF$ ,  $CE$  to  $AG$ , and  $DE$  to  $FG$ .

Because  $DC$ ,  $CE$  are equal to  $FA$ ,  $AG$ , each to each, and the base  $DE$  to  $FG$ , the angle  $C$  is equal to  $A$  (Prop. 8). Therefore at the given point  $A$ , in the given straight line  $AB$ , the angle  $FAG$  is made equal to the given rectilineal angle  $C$ .



*Scholium.* If the parts  $CD$ ,  $CE$  be taken equal to each other, the construction will be more commodious. En.

### PROPOSITION XXVI. THEOREM.

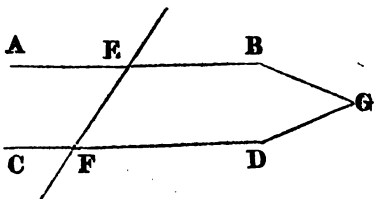
*This is Prop. A, page 25.*

PROPOSITION XXVII. THEOREM.

If a straight line intersect two other straight lines which are in the same plane, and make the alternate angles equal to each other, those two lines are parallel. *See Appendix to Book I.*

Let the straight line EF, which intersects the two straight lines AB, CD, make the alternate angles AEF, EFD equal to each other; AB is parallel to CD.

For if AB and CD be not parallel, they are inclined to each other, and, if produced, will meet either toward B, D, or toward A, C. Let them be produced and meet toward B, D, in the point G; then GEF is a triangle, and its exterior angle AEF is greater than the interior and opposite angle EFG (Prop. 16.). But the angle AEF is also equal to EFG, which is impossible; therefore AB and CD being produced do not meet toward B, D. In like manner it may be demonstrated that they do not meet toward A, C. Therefore AB, CD are not inclined to each other. Therefore AB is parallel to CD (14 Def.). Wherefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D.\*



PROPOSITION XXVIII. THEOREM.

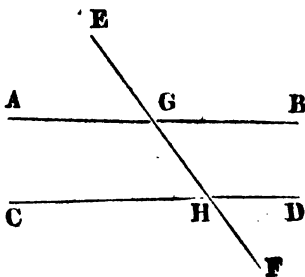
If a straight line intersect two other straight lines which are in the same plane, and make the exterior angle equal to the interior and opposite angle on the same side of the line, or make the two interior angles on the same side together equal to two right angles; the two straight lines are parallel.

Let the straight line EF, which intersects the two straight lines AB, CD, make the exterior angle EGB equal to the inte-

\* By reason of the false supposition, and construction of the figure, this demonstration is not intelligible to learners.

rior and opposite angle GHD on the same side; or make the interior angles BGH, GHD on the same side, together equal to two right angles; AB is parallel to CD.

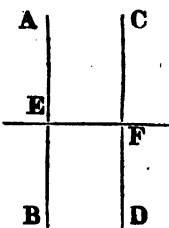
Because the angle EGB is equal to GHD, and EGB is also equal to the angle AGH (Prop. 15.), the angle AGH is equal to GHD; and they are alternate angles; therefore AB is parallel to CD (Prop. 27.).



Again, the angles BGH, GHD are together equal to two right angles (by Hyp.), and AGH, BGH, are together equal to two right angles (Prop. 13.); therefore the angles AGH, BGH, are together equal to the angles BGH, GHD. Take away the common angle BGH, then the remaining angles AGH, GHD are equal; and they are alternate angles; therefore AB is parallel to CD. Wherefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. Straight lines which are perpendicular to the same straight line, and in the same plane with it, are parallel to one another.

If AB and CD be perp. to EF, the angles at E and F will be right angles (10 Def.), and therefore equal (11 Def. Cor.); wherefore AB is parallel to CD.



### PROPOSITION XXIX. THEOREM.

If a straight line intersect two parallel straight lines it makes the alternate angles equal to each other; and the exterior angle equal to the interior and opposite angle on the same side of it; and likewise the two interior angles on the same side together equal to two right angles.

**AXIOM 10.** *Two straight lines which intersect each other cannot be both parallel to the same straight line.\**

Let the straight line EF intersect the parallel straight lines AB, CD; the alternate angles AGH, GHD are equal to each

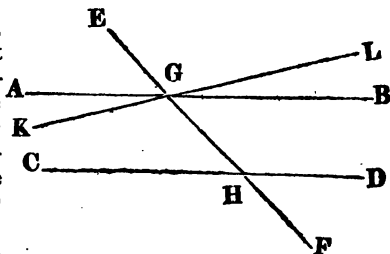
---

\* This axiom was omitted in its proper place by mistake.



other; and the exterior angle  $EGB$  is equal to the interior and opposite angle  $GHD$  on the same side of  $EF$ ; and the two interior angles  $BGH, GHD$ , on the same side, are together equal to two right angles.

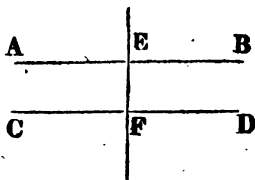
If  $AGH$  be not equal to  $GHD$ , one of them must be greater than the other. Let  $AGH$  be the greater, and at the point  $G$ , in the straight line  $EF$ , make the angle  $KGH$  equal to  $GHD$  (Prop. 23.), and produce  $KG$  to  $L$ ;  $KL$  will be parallel to  $CD$  (Prop. 27). But  $AB$  is also parallel to  $CD$ ; therefore two straight lines  $AB, KL$ , which intersect each other, are parallel to the same line  $CD$ , which is impossible (10 Ax.). Therefore the angles  $AGH, GHD$  are not unequal.



Again, the angle  $EGB$  is equal to  $AGH$  (Prop. 15.); and  $AGH$  is proved to be equal to  $GHD$ ; therefore the angle  $EGB$  is likewise equal to  $GHD$ . Add to each of these the angle  $BGH$ , then the angles  $EGB, BGH$  are together equal to the angles  $BGH, GHD$ . But  $EGB, BGH$  are together equal to two right angles (Prop. 13); therefore also  $BGH, GHD$  are together equal to two right angles. Wherefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. If a straight line  $EF$  be perpendicular to one  $CD$  of two parallel straight lines  $AB, CD$ , it is also perpendicular to the other  $AB$ .

For the angle  $AEF$  is equal to  $EFD$ , and the angle  $BEF$  is equal to  $EFC$ . But the angles  $EFD$  and  $EFC$  are right angles, because  $EF$  is perp. to  $CD$ . Therefore  $AEF$  and  $BEF$  are right angles, therefore  $EF$  is perpendicular to  $AB$ . Ed.



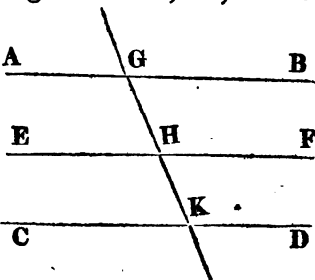
### PROPOSITION XXX. THEOREM.

Straight lines which are parallel to the same straight line are parallel to one another.

G

Let the straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be parallel to  $EF$ ;  $AB$  is also parallel to  $CD$ .

Let the line  $GHK$  cut the straight lines  $AB$ ,  $EF$ ,  $CD$ . Because  $GHK$  cuts the parallel lines  $AB$ ,  $EF$ , the angle  $AGH$  is equal to  $GHE$  (Prop. 29); and because  $GK$  cuts the parallel lines  $EF$ ,  $CD$ , the angle  $GHE$  is equal to  $GKD$ ; therefore also the angle  $AGH$  is equal to  $GKD$ ; and they are alternate angles; therefore  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$  (Prop. 27).  
Wherefore straight lines &c.  
Q. E. D.

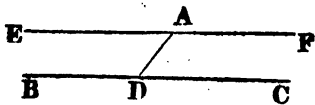


### PROPOSITION XXXI. PROBLEM.

To draw a straight line through a given point parallel to a given straight line.

Let  $A$  be the given point, and  $BC$  the given straight line; it is required to draw a straight line through  $A$  parallel to  $BC$ .

In  $BC$  take any point  $D$ , and join  $AD$  at the point  $A$ , in the line  $AD$ , make the angle  $DAE$  equal to  $ADC$  (Prop. 23); and produce the line  $EA$  to  $F$ . Then  $EF$  is parallel to  $BC$ .



Because  $AD$  meets the two straight lines  $BC$ ,  $EF$ , and makes the alternate angles  $EAD$ ,  $ADC$  equal to each other,  $EF$  is parallel to  $BC$  (Prop. 27). Therefore the line  $EAF$  is drawn through the given point  $A$  parallel to the given line  $BC$ . Which was to be done.

### PROPOSITION XXXII. THEOREM.\*

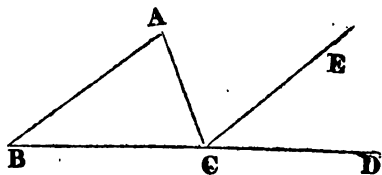
1. If any side of a rectilineal triangle be produced, the exterior angle is equal to the two interior and opposite angles taken together.

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle, and let a side  $BC$  be produced to  $D$ ; the exterior angle  $ACD$  is equal to the two interior and opposite angles  $CAB$ ,  $ABC$  together.

\*Euclid's enunciation contains two distinct propositions, which are enunciated and demonstrated separately, as follows.

Through the point C draw CE parallel to the side AB (Prop. 31.).

Because AB is parallel to CE, and AC meets them, the alternate angles BAC, ACE are equal (Prop. 29.); and because AB is parallel to CE, and BD meets them, the exterior angle ECD is equal to the interior and opposite angle B. Hence the whole exterior angle ACD is equal to the two interior and opposite angles A and B together. Therefore, if any side &c. Q. E. D.



Cor. The difference between the exterior angle and either of the interior and opposite angles is equal to the other interior and opposite angle.

2. The three angles of every rectilineal triangle are together equal to two right angles.

Let ABC be a triangle; the three angles A, B, C, are together equal to two right angles.

Produce any side BC to D, then the exterior angle ACD is equal to the two interior and opposite angles CAB, ABC, together. To these equals add the angle ACB, then the two angles ACD, ACB are together equal to the three angles CBA, BAC, ACB. But the angles ACD, ACB are together equal to two right angles (Prop. 13.); therefore the three angles CBA, BAC, ACB are together equal to two right angles. Wherefore the three angles &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. 1. If one angle in one triangle be equal to one angle in another, the other two angles of the former triangle are together equal to the other two angles of the latter. Ed.

Cor. 2. If two angles of one triangle be together equal to two angles of another, the third angle of the former triangle is equal to the third angle of the latter (§ Ax.). Ed.

Cor. 3. If one angle in any triangle be either right or obtuse, then each of the other two angles is acute. Ed.

Cor. 4. If one angle in any triangle be a right angle, then the other two angles together are equal to a right angle. *Ed.*

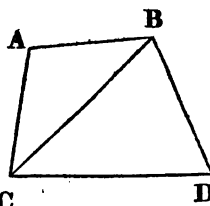
*Note.* Two such angles are called *complements* of each other to a right angle.

Cor. 5. Each angle of an equilateral triangle is one third of two right angles, or two thirds of one right angle.

Let  $A$  denote each angle, then  $3 A = 2$  right angles, therefore  $A = \frac{2}{3}$  of 2 right angles, or  $\frac{2}{3}$  of one right angle. *Ed.*

Cor. 6. In every quadrilateral figure the sum of the four angles is equal to four right angles.

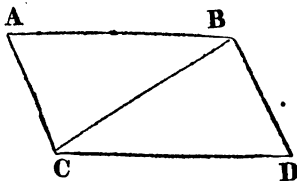
For if a line  $BC$  be drawn between two opposite angles of any quadrilateral figure  $ACDB$ , it will divide the figure into two triangles  $ABC$ ,  $BCD$ . Now the sum of the three angles of each triangle is equal to two right angles; therefore all the angles of both triangles, which make the four angles of the quadrilateral figure, are together equal to four right angles. *Ed.*



### PROPOSITION XXXIII. THEOREM.

The two straight lines which join the corresponding extremities of two equal and parallel straight lines are also equal and parallel.

Let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be two equal and parallel lines, and let the lines  $AC$ ,  $BD$  join their corresponding extremities; then  $AC$ ,  $BD$  are also equal and parallel.



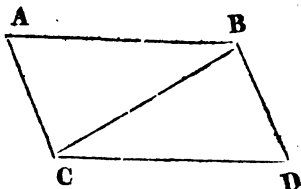
Draw the diagonal  $BC$ . Because  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$ , and  $BC$  meets them, the alternate angles  $ABC$ ,  $BCD$  are equal (Prop. 29). Because the side  $AB$  is equal to  $CD$ , and  $BC$  is common to the two triangles  $ABC$ ,  $DCB$ , and the angle  $ABC$  is equal to  $BCD$ , the base  $AC$  is equal to  $BD$  (Prop. 4.), and the angle  $ACB$  to  $CBD$ . Because the line  $BC$  meets the two lines  $AC$ ,  $BD$ , and makes the alternate angles  $ACB$ ,  $CBD$  equal to each other,  $AC$  is parallel to  $BD$  (Prop. 27.); and  $AC$  was shown to be equal to  $BD$ . Therefore, the two straight lines &c. *Q. E. D.*

PROPOSITION XXXIV. THEOREM.

The two opposite sides of a parallelogram are equal to each other, and also the two opposite angles; and the diagonal of a parallelogram divides it into two equal triangles.

Let ACDB be a parallelogram, of which BC is a diagonal; the opposite sides of the figure are equal to each other, and also the opposite angles; and the diagonal BC bisects it.

Because AB is parallel to CD, and BC meets them, the alternate angles ABC, BCD are equal to each other (Prop. 29); and because AC is parallel to BD, and BC meets them, the alternate angles ACB, CBD are equal to each other; wherefore the two triangles ABC, CBD have two angles ABC, BCA in one equal to two angles BCD, CBD in the other, each to each, therefore the remaining angles BAC, BDC are equal (2 Cor. 32.), and the whole angles ABD, ACD are equal. Hence the opposite angles of a paral. are equal.



Again, the triangles ABC, CBD are mutually equiangular, and the side BC is common to both, therefore they are equal in all respects (A), and the side AB is equal to CD, and the side AC to BD, and the triangle ABC to CBD. Therefore the opposite sides of a paral. are equal, and the diagonal bisects it. Wherefore the opposite sides &c. Q. E. D.

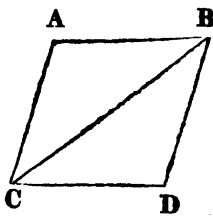
PROPOSITION B. THEOREM.

Ed.

If the opposite sides of a quadrilateral figure be equal, they are also parallel, that is, the figure is a parallelogram.

Let ABDC be a quadrilateral figure, having its opposite sides equal, namely, AB equal to CD, and AC equal to BD; the opposite sides are parallel.

Draw the diagonal BC; then, because the side AB is equal to CD, and the side AC to BD, and the side BC is common to the triangles ACB, BCD, the angles ABC, BCD are equal (Prop. 8.) and the angles ACB, CBD are equal. But ABC, BCD are alternate angles; there-



fore  $AB, CD$  are parallel (Prop. 27.). Also  $ACB, CBD$  are alternate angles; therefore  $AC, BD$  are parallel. Hence  $ABDC$  is a parallelogram. Therefore, if the opposite sides &c. Q. E. D.

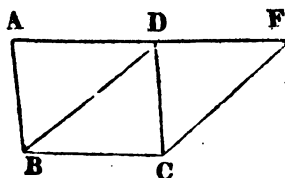
**COR.** If the opposite sides of a quadrilateral figure be equal, the opposite angles are also equal. For the figure is a parallelogram, therefore the opposite angles are equal.

### PROPOSITION XXXV. THEOREM.

Parallelograms on the same base, and between the same parallels, are equal to one another; that is, their surfaces are equal.

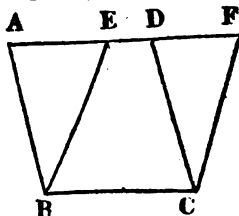
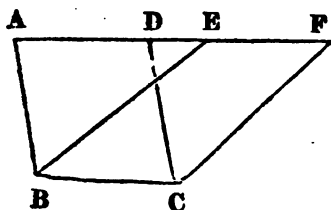
Let the parallelograms  $ABCD, DBCF$  be on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same parallels  $AF, BC$ ; they are equal in surface.

If the sides  $AD, DF$  of the parallelograms  $ABCD, DBCF$ , opposite to the base  $BC$ , be terminated in the same point  $D$ , it is plain that each of the parallelograms is double of the triangle  $BDC$  (Prop. 34); therefore they are equal to each other.



But, if the sides  $AD, EF$ , opposite to the base  $BC$  of the parallelograms  $ABCD, EBCF$ , be not terminated in the same point; then, because  $ABCD$  is a paral.  $AD$  is equal to  $BC$  (Prop. 34). For the same reason  $EF$  is equal to  $BC$ . Wherefore  $AD$  is equal to  $EF$ . From the whole line  $AF$  take the two equal parts  $AD, EF$ , and the remainders  $DF, AE$  will be equal.

Now  $AB$  is equal to  $DC$ ; and the exterior angle  $FDC$  is equal to the interior angle  $EAB$  (Prop. 29); wherefore the tri-



angle  $EAB$  is equal to the triangle  $FDC$  (Prop. 4). Take the triangle  $FDC$  from the trapezium  $ABCF$ , and the paral.  $ABCD$

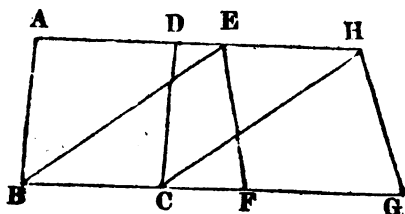
will remain; and take the triangle AEB from the trap. ABCF, and the paral. EBCF will remain. Therefore the paral. ABCD is equal to EBCF. Therefore, parallelograms &c. Q. E. D.

PROPOSITION XXXVI. THEOREM.

Parallelograms on equal bases, and between the same parallels, are equal to one another.

Let ABCD, EFGH be parals. on equal bases BC, FG, and between the same parallels AH, BG; the paral. ABCD is equal to EFGH.

Join BE, CH. Because BC is equal to FG, and FG to EH (Prop. 34), BC is equal to EH. But BC, EH are parallels, and joined at their corresponding extremities by the lines BE, CH; therefore BE, CH are equal and parallel (Prop. 33); therefore EBCH is a paral. and it is equal to ABCD (Prop. 35). But the paral. EFGH is equal to EBCH; therefore also the paral. ABCD is equal to EFGH. Wherefore, parallelograms &c. Q. E. D.



*Otherwise.* This is an obvious deduction from the last proposition, and needs no formal proof by a figure.

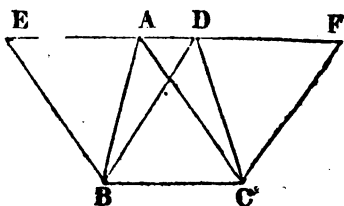
Suppose the base of one paral. to be applied to the base of the other; then the bases will coincide, because they are equal, and the two parals. will stand on the same base and between the same parallels. Therefore they are equal to each other. Therefore, parallelograms &c. Q. E. D. Ed.

PROPOSITION XXXVII. THEOREM.

Triangles on the same base, and between the same parallels, are equal to one another; that is, their surfaces are equal.

Let the triangles ABC, DBC be on the same base BC, and between the same parallels AD, BC; the triangle ABC is equal to DBC.

Produce AD both ways to the points E, F; through B draw BE parallel to CA (Prop. 31), and through C draw CF parallel to BD; then each of the figures EBCA, DBCF is a paral.; and EBCA is equal to DBCF (Prop. 35).



Now the triangle ABC is half of the paral. EBCA (Prop. 34); and the triangle DBC is half of the paral. DBCF; therefore the triangle ABC is equal to DBC (7 Ax.). Wherefore, triangles &c. Q. E. D.

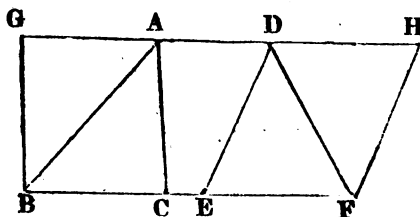
*Otherwise.* This is a cor. to prop. 35. For triangles are the halves of parallelograms on the same base and between the same parallels (Prop. 34.), and therefore are equal to one another. Ed.

### PROPOSITION XXXVIII. THEOREM.

Triangles on equal bases, and between the same parallels, are equal to one another.

Let the triangles ABC, DEF be on equal bases BC, EF, and between the same parallels BF, AD; the triangle ABC is equal to DEF.

Produce AD both ways to the points G, H; through B draw BG parallel to CA (Prop. 31), and through F draw FH parallel



to ED; then the figures GBCA, DEFH are parallelograms; and they are equal (Prop. 36).

Now the triangle ABC is half of the paral. GBCA (Prop. 34), and the triangle DEF is half of the paral. DEFH; therefore the triangle ABC is equal to DEF (7 Ax.). Wherefore, triangles &c. Q. E. D.

*Otherwise.* This is a cor. to prop. 36. For they are the halves of parals. on equal bases and between the same parallels, and therefore are equal. Ed.

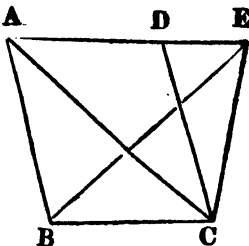


PROPOSITION XLI. THEOREM.

If a parallelogram and a triangle be on the same base, and between the same parallels, the parallelogram is double of the triangle.

Let the paral. ABCD and the triangle EBC be on the same base BC; and between the same parallels BC, AE; the paral. ABCD is double of the triangle EBC.

Join AC; then the triangle ABC is equal to EBC (Prop. 37). But the paral. ABCD is double of the triangle ABC (Prop. 34); wherefore ABCD is also double of the triangle EBC. Therefore, if a parallelogram &c. Q. E. D.



COR. If a parallelogram and a triangle be between the same parallels, and if the base of the paral. be half the base of the triangle, the paral. will be equal to the triangle.

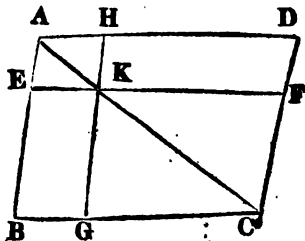
For if a paral. were described on half the base BC, and between the parallels BC, AE, it is evident that it would be equal to half the paral. ABCD, and therefore equal to the triangle EBC on double the base. Ed.

PROPOSITION XLIII. THEOREM.

The complements of the two parallelograms which are about the diagonal of any parallelogram are equal to each other.

Let ABCD be a paral. of which the diagonal is AC; let EH, FG be the parals. about AC, that is, through which AC passes; and let BK, KD be the other parals. which complete the whole figure ABCD, and are therefore called the *complements*. The complements BK, KD are equal.

Because ABCD, AEKH, KGCF are parallelograms, and AC is their common diagonal, the triangle ABC is equal to ADC (Prop. 34), and the triangle AEK to AHK, and the triangle KGC to KFC; therefore the complements BK, KD are equal (3 Ax.). Therefore, the complements &c. Q. E. D. Ed.



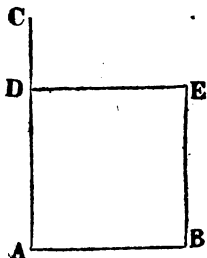
## PROPOSITION XLVI. PROBLEM.

To describe a square on a given straight line.

Let AB be the given straight line on which it is required to describe a square.

From the point A draw AC perp. to AB, and make AD equal to AB; through D draw DE parallel to AB (Prop. 31), and through B draw BE parallel to AD; then ADEB is a square described on AB. For ADEB is a paral., therefore AB is equal to DE (Prop. 34), and AD to BE. But BA is equal to AD; therefore the four lines BA, AD, DE, EB, are equal to one another, and the paral. ADEB is equilateral.

The line AD meeting the parallels AB, DE, makes the angles BAD, ADE equal to two right angles (Prop. 29). But BAD is a right angle; therefore ADE is a right angle. Now the angle B is equal to its opposite angle D, and the angle E to A (Prop. 34); therefore each of the angles B, E is a right angle; wherefore the figure ADEB is rectangular. But it is equilateral; therefore it is a square; and it is described on the given straight line AB. Which was to be done.



COR. A parallelogram having one angle right, and two adjacent sides equal, is a square.

## PROPOSITION XLVII. THEOREM.

*See Prop. B, Book II.*

## PROPOSITION C. THEOREM.

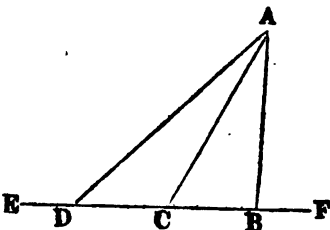
ED.

If straight lines be drawn from the same point to meet a given straight line, the perpendicular is the least, and any line which is nearer the perpendicular than another is less than the other.

Let  $A$  be any point, and  $EF$  a given straight line; and let  $AB$ ,  $AC$ ,  $AD$  be straight lines drawn from  $A$  to meet  $EF$ .

Let  $AB$  be perp. to  $EF$ ;  $AB$  is less than  $AC$ , and  $AC$  is less than  $AD$ . For since  $B$  is a right angle,  $ACB$  is an acute angle (3 Cor. 32), therefore the side  $AC$  is greater than  $AB$  (Prop. 19).

Again, because  $ACB$  is an acute angle,  $ACD$  is obtuse (Prop. 13), therefore the angle  $ADC$  is acute, therefore the side  $AD$  is greater than  $AC$ , and still greater than  $AB$ . Therefore, if straight lines &c. Q. E. D.



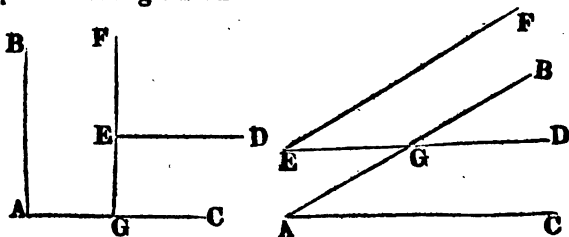
Cor. The distance between a point and a straight line is the perpendicular drawn from the point to the line.

*Scholium.* The term *distance* signifies the shortest interval between two points; therefore the distance between two points is the straight line which joins them.

### PROPOSITION D. THEOREM. Ed.

If the sides of one angle be parallel to the sides of another angle, each to each, and be directed the same way, the angles are equal to each other.

Let the sides  $AC$ ,  $AB$  of the angle  $BAC$  be parallel to the sides  $ED$ ,  $EF$  of the angle  $DEF$ , each to each; the angle  $BAC$  is equal to the angle  $DEF$ .



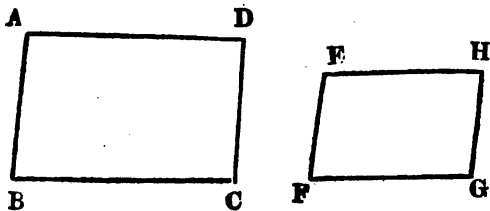
Produce  $FE$  to meet  $AC$  in  $G$  (in the first figure), then, because  $BA$  is parallel to  $FG$ , the angle  $BAC$  is equal to  $FGC$ ; and because  $AC$  is parallel to  $ED$ , the angle  $FED$  is equal to  $FGC$ ; therefore the angle  $BAC$  is equal to  $FED$ .

Again (in the second figure), because  $AC$  is parallel to  $ED$ , the angle  $BAC$  is equal to the alternate angle  $AGE$  (Prop. 29); and because  $AB$  is parallel to  $EF$ , the angle  $FED$  is equal to  $AGE$ ; therefore the angle  $BAC$  is equal to  $FED$ . Therefore, if the sides &c. Q. E. D.

**PROPOSITION E. THEOREM. Ed.**

If two parallelograms have one angle in one parallelogram equal to one angle in the other, the remaining angles of the former are equal to the remaining corresponding angles of the latter.

Let  $ABCD$ ,  $EFGH$  be two parallelograms, which have the angles at  $A$  and  $E$  equal; the other angles of the former paral. are equal to the other angles of the latter, each to each, namely, the angle  $B$  is equal to  $F$ , the angle  $C$  to  $G$ , and the angle  $D$  to  $H$ .

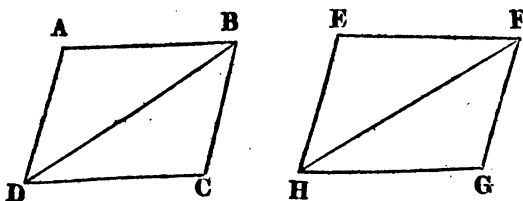


For in the paral.  $ABCD$  the two angles  $A$  and  $B$  are together equal to two right angles (Prop. 29); and in the paral.  $EFGH$  the two angles  $E$  and  $F$  are together equal to two right angles. Therefore the angles  $A$  and  $B$  are together equal to the angles  $E$  and  $F$ . Therefore if from these equals the equal angles  $A$  and  $E$  be taken, the remaining angles  $B$  and  $F$  will be equal.

Again, in the paral.  $ABCD$  the opposite angles  $A$  and  $C$  are equal (Prop. 34), and in the paral.  $EFGH$  the opposite angles  $E$  and  $G$  are equal. But the angles  $A$  and  $E$  are equal, therefore the angles  $C$  and  $G$  are equal. In the same manner it may be proved that the angle  $D$ , to which  $B$  is opposite, is equal to the angle  $H$ , to which  $F$  is opposite. Therefore, if two parallelograms &c. Q. E. D.

PROPOSITION F. THEOREM. Ed.

If two parallelograms have two adjacent sides of one equal to two adjacent sides of the other, each to each; and have also the angles contained by those sides equal to each other; the parallelograms will be equal in all respects.



Let  $ABCD$ ,  $EFGH$  be two parallelograms, which have the two sides  $AB$ ,  $AD$  equal to the two sides  $EF$ ,  $EH$ , each to each, and the angle  $A$  equal to  $E$ ; the parallelograms are equal, and the other corresponding sides are equal, and the other corresponding angles are equal.

Draw the diagonals  $BD$ ,  $FH$ , then the triangle  $ABD$  is equal to  $BCD$  (Prop. 34), and the triangle  $EFH$  is equal to  $FGH$ . But the triangle  $ABD$  is equal to  $EFH$  (Prop. 4), therefore the triangle  $BCD$  is equal to  $FGH$ . Consequently the paral.  $ABCD$  is equal to  $EFGH$ .

Again, the side  $AB$  is equal to  $DC$ , and the side  $AD$  is equal to  $BC$  (Prop. 34); also the side  $EF$  is equal to  $HG$ , and the side  $EH$  is equal to  $FG$ . But the side  $AB$  is equal to  $EF$ , and the side  $AD$  is equal to  $EH$ . Consequently the side  $DC$  is equal to  $HG$ , and the side  $BC$  is equal to  $FG$ .

Lastly, the angle  $A$  is equal to  $C$ , and the angle  $E$  is equal to  $G$ . But the angle  $A$  is equal to  $E$ , therefore the angle  $C$  is equal to  $G$ . Consequently the two angles  $ABC$ ,  $ADC$  are together equal to the two angles  $EFG$ ,  $EHG$  together (6 Cor. 32). Hence those four angles are equal to one another. Therefore, if two parallelograms &c.  $Q. E. D.$

**COR. 1.** Two rectangles contained by equal straight lines are equal to each other.

**COR. 2.** Squares which stand on equal straight lines are equal to one another.

## PROPOSITION G. THEOREM.

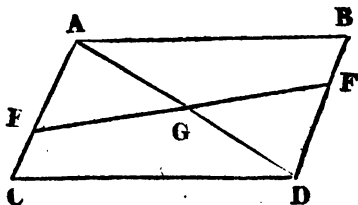
Ed.

A straight line passing through the middle of the diagonal of a parallelogram divides the parallelogram into two equal parts.

Let  $ABDC$  be a paral.,  
 $AD$  a diagonal, and  $EF$  a  
 line passing through its  
 middle  $G$ ; the figure  
 $ABFE$  is equal to  $EFDC$ .

For the triangles  $ABD$ ,  
 $ACD$  are equal, and the  
 triangles  $AEG$ ,  $DGF$  are  
 equiangular, and have the  
 sides  $AG$ ,  $DG$  equal, there-  
 fore they are equal (Prop.  
 A). Conseq. if they be  
 taken from the triangles  $ABD$ ,  $ACD$ , the remainders  $ABFG$ ,  
 $CDGF$  will be equal. Hence it is evident that  $ABFG$  and  
 $AGE$  are together equal to  $CDGE$  and  $DGF$  together, or  
 $ABFE$ ,  $CDFE$ . Therefore, a straight line &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. Any straight line  $EF$  drawn through the middle of the  
 diagonal of a parallelogram is bisected by the diagonal.



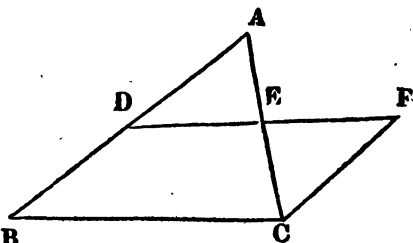
## PROPOSITION H. THEOREM.

Ed.

If two sides of a triangle be bisected, the straight  
 line which joins the points of section will be parallel  
 to the third side, and equal to half of it.

Let the sides  $AB$ ,  
 $AC$  of the triangle  
 $ABC$  be bisected in  
 the points  $D$ ,  $E$ ; the  
 straight line  $DE$  join-  
 ing those points will  
 be parallel to  $BC$ , and  
 equal to half of  $BC$ .

In  $DE$  produced  
 take  $EF$  equal to  $DE$ ,  
 and join  $CF$ . Because  
 the side  $DE$  is equal to  $EF$ , and  $AE$  equal to  $EC$ , and the angle  
 $AED$  equal to  $CEF$ , the triangles  $ADE$ ,  $FEC$  are equal in all  
 respects, therefore the side  $AD$  is equal to  $CF$ , and the angle  
 $ADF$  equal to the alternate angle  $CFE$ , therefore  $AB$  is paral-  
 lel to  $FC$ .



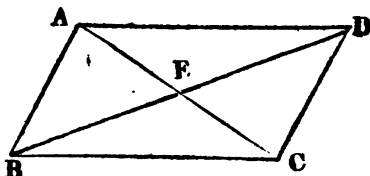
Because  $BD$  or  $AD$  and  $CF$  are equal and parallel, the straight lines  $BC$ ,  $DF$  joining their extremes are also equal and parallel (Prop. 33). But  $DF$  is double of  $DE$ , therefore  $BC$  is double of  $DE$ . Therefore, if two sides &c. Q. E. D.

PROPOSITION I. THEOREM. Ed.

The diagonals of any parallelogram bisect each other, and divide the parallelogram into four equal triangles.

1. Let  $ABCD$  be any parallelogram, of which the diagonals are  $AC$  and  $BD$ ; they will bisect each other.

Let  $AC$ ,  $BD$  intersect each other in  $E$ ; then, in the triangles  $ADE$ ,  $BCE$ , the vertical angles at  $E$  are equal (Prop. 15), and the alternate angles  $EAD$ ,  $ECB$  are equal (Prop. 29), and the alternate angles  $EDA$ ,  $EBC$



are equal, and the sides  $AD$ ,  $BC$  are equal (Prop. 34); therefore the other sides which are opposite to equal angles are also equal (Prop. A), namely,  $AE$  to  $EC$ , and  $DE$  to  $EB$ . Therefore the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$  bisect each other in  $E$ .

2. The diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$  divide the parallelogram into four equal triangles.

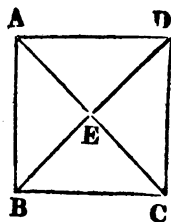
For the triangles  $ABE$ ,  $ADE$  being on equal bases  $BE$ ,  $ED$  (by case 1), and between the same parallels, are equal; and the triangles  $ADE$ ,  $CDE$  being on equal bases  $AE$ ,  $EC$ , and between the same parallels, are equal; and the triangles  $CDE$ ,  $CBE$  being on equal bases  $DE$ ,  $EB$ , and between the same parallels, are equal. Consequently the four triangles  $ABE$ ,  $ADE$ ,  $CDE$ ,  $CBE$ , are equal to one another. Therefore, the diagonals &c. Q. E. D.

PROPOSITION K. THEOREM. Ed.

The diagonals of a square bisect each other, and divide the square into four right angled triangles which are equal in all respects.

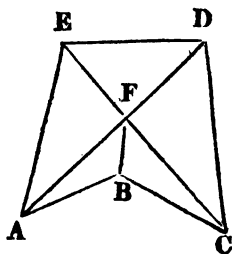
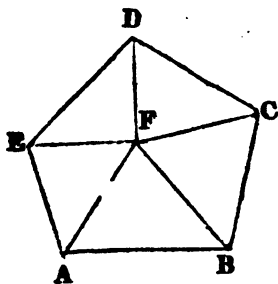
Let  $ABCD$  be a square, of which the diagonals are  $AC$ ,  $BD$ ; the four triangles  $ABE$ ,  $ADE$ ,  $CBE$ ,  $CDE$ , are right angled, and are equal in all respects.

For the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$  bisect each other (Prop. I.), and divide the square into four triangles which are mutually equilateral, and therefore are equal in all respects, therefore the angles at  $E$  are right angled. Therefore, the diagonals &c. Q. E. D.



### PROPOSITION L. THEOREM.

All the interior angles of any rectilineal figure are together equal to twice as many right angles as the figure has sides, wanting four right angles.



Let  $ABCDE$  be any rectilineal figure; all its interior angles  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$ ,  $E$ , are together equal to twice as many right angles, wanting four, as the figure has sides.

For any rectilineal figure  $ABCDE$  can be divided into as many triangles as it has sides, by drawing lines from a point  $F$  within the figure to each of its angles; and the three angles of each triangle are together equal to two right angles (Prop. 32), therefore all the angles of these triangles are equal to twice as many right angles as there are triangles, that is, as there are sides of the figure. But the same angles are equal to the angles of the figure, together with the angles at the point  $F$ , which is the common vertex of the triangles; that is, together with four right angles (3 Cor. 13). Therefore, twice as many right angles as the figure has sides are equal to all the angles of the figure, together with four right angles: that is, the angles of the figure are equal to twice as many right angles as the figure has sides, wanting four. Therefore, all the interior angles &c. Q. E. D.



**COR.** All the interior angles of any quadrilateral figure are together equal to four right angles.

*Scholium.* Let  $n$  denote the number of the sides of a polygon,  $s$  the sum of all the interior angles, and  $r$  a right angle; then the proposition will be expressed by this theorem,  $s = 2r \times n - 4r$ , by means of which the sum of all the interior angles of any convex polygon may be found. Thus, if the figure be quadrilateral, then  $n = 4$ , and  $s = 2r \times n - 4r = 8r - 4r = 4r$ , that is, four right angles, which answers to 6 Cor. 32. If  $n = 5$ , then  $2r \times n - 4r = 10r - 4r = 6r$ .

If the figure proposed be an equiangular polygon, or have all its angles equal, the quantity of each angle may be found by this formula. Suppose an equiangular polygon of six sides, then  $2r \times n - 4r = 12r - 4r = 8r$ , therefore  $\frac{8}{5}r = \frac{8}{5}r = \frac{4}{5} \times 90 = 4 \times 30 = 120$ , that is, each of the angles of a regular hexagon is 120 degrees. Let the figure be a regular octagon, then  $2r \times n - 4r = 12r$ , therefore  $\frac{12}{6}r = \frac{12}{6}r = \frac{2}{3} \times 90 = 3 \times 45 = 135$  degrees.

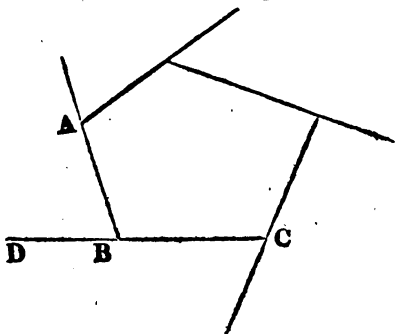
Let  $s = 2r \times n - 4r = (2n - 4) \times r = (n - 2) \times 2r$ , that is, all the interior angles of any convex rectilinear figure are together equal to twice as many right angles as the figure has sides less two sides. ED.

### PROPOSITION M. THEOREM.

All the exterior angles of any convex rectilinear figure, made by producing all the sides outward in the same direction, are together equal to four right angles.

Let A, B, C, &c. be the exterior angles of any rectilinear figure, made by producing its sides; the exterior angles A, B, C, &c. are together equal to four right angles.

Because every interior angle ABC of the figure, with its adjacent exterior angle ABD, are equal to two right angles (Prop. 13); and because there are as many exterior or interior angles as the figure has sides; all the interior together with all the exterior angles of the figure are equal to twice as many right angles as there are sides of the figure. But all the interior angles together with four right angles



are equal to twice as many right angles as there are sides of the figure (Prop. L). Therefore all the interior and all the exterior angles are together equal to all the interior angles together with four right angles. From these equals take away all the interior angles, and all the exterior angles will be equal to four right angles. Therefore, all the exterior &c. Q. E. D.

*Scholium.* The propositions in this Book are not arranged in the order of the subjects, but in such order as to enable the Author to demonstrate certain propositions by means of others which are placed before them. In the following abstract they are disposed according to the nature of the subjects, and such theorems as are of little or no use are omitted. Ed.

### THE PRINCIPAL THEOREMS IN BOOK I.

#### *Properties of Straight Lines and Angles:*

If one straight line meet another, the sum of the two adjacent angles is equal to two right angles.

If any number of straight lines intersect or meet one another in the same point, the sum of all the angles about that point is equal to four right angles.

If two straight lines intersect each other, the vertical angles are equal.

#### *Properties of Parallel Lines.*

If a straight line intersect two straight lines, and make the alternate angles equal, or the exterior angle equal to the interior and opposite angle on the same side of the cutting line, or the sum of the two interior angles on the same side equal to two right angles, then those two lines are parallel.

A straight line intersecting two parallel straight lines makes the alternate angles equal, and the exterior angle equal to the interior and opposite angle on the same side of the cutting line, and the sum of the two interior angles on the same side equal to two right angles.

Straight lines which are parallel to the same straight line are parallel to one another.

*Mutual Equality of Triangles.*

When the three sides of one triangle are respectively equal to the three sides of another, the angles opposite to equal sides are also equal, and the triangles are equal.

When two triangles are mutually equiangular, and have two corresponding sides equal, the other corresponding sides (or the sides opposite to equal angles in each triangle) will be equal.

When two sides and the included angle of one triangle are respectively equal to two sides and the included angle of another, then the third sides are equal, and the angles opposite to equal sides are also equal,

*Properties of Triangles.*

In every triangle the greater of any two sides subtends the greater angle; and, conversely, the greater of any two angles is subtended by the greater side.

The sum of any two sides of a triangle is greater than the third side.

If one side of any triangle be produced, the external angle is equal to both the internal and opposite angles.

The sum of the three angles of every triangle is equal to two right angles.

If two angles of one triangle be together equal to two angles of another, the third angle of the former triangle is equal to the third angle of the latter.

If one angle of any triangle be a right angle, the sum of the other two angles is equal to a right angle.

If one angle of any triangle be either right or obtuse, each of the other two angles is acute.

Triangles on the same base, or on equal bases, and between the same parallels, are equal.

If two sides of a triangle be equal, the opposite angles are equal; and if two angles of a triangle be equal, the opposite sides are equal.

*Properties of Parallelograms.*

Straight lines which join the corresponding extremities of two equal and parallel straight lines are also equal and parallel; that is, those four lines make a parallelogram.

The opposite sides of a parallelogram are equal, and also the opposite angles.

The diagonal of a parallelogram divides it into two equal triangles.

If the opposite sides of a quadrilateral figure be equal, they are also parallel; and if the opposite angles of a quadrilateral figure be equal, the opposite sides are parallel; that is, in both cases the figure is a parallelogram.

The diagonals of any parallelogram bisect each other.

Parallelograms on the same base, or on equal bases, and between the same parallels, are equal.

If a parallelogram and a triangle stand on the same base and between the same parallels, the parallelogram is double of the triangle.

The complements of the two parallelograms which are about the diagonal of any parallelogram are equal to each other.

*General Properties of Rectilinear Figures.*

The sum of all the internal angles of any rectilinear figure is equal to twice as many right angles, except four, as the figure has sides.

If all the sides of any rectilinear figure be produced outward, the sum of all the external angles is equal to four right angles.

The sum of the four angles of every quadrilateral figure is equal to four right angles.

## APPENDIX.

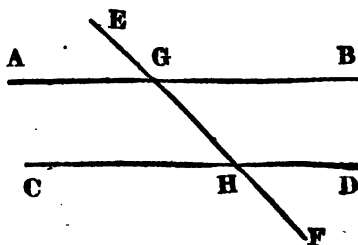
The demonstrations of the properties of parallel lines are seldom understood by learners. Indeed the subject of parallel lines is allowed to be one of the most difficult in the elements of geometry, and has exercised the ingenuity of many modern geometers, who have not been able to remove all the difficulties without impairing the rigour of geometrical demonstration. Some have attempted to give more simple demonstrations than those of Euclid, by means of new axioms, and others by means of a number of auxiliary propositions.

The following method of demonstrating the properties of parallel lines is plain and intelligible to youth, and appears to be legitimate. The definition of parallel lines which is here adopted has been proposed by some skilful mathematicians, and seems to be unexceptionable.

*Definition.* Parallel lines are such as lie in the same plane, and have no inclination to one another; that is, if produced to any length both ways they neither approach to nor recede from one another.

*Cor. 1.* Hence parallel lines are equidistant.

*Cor. 2.* Hence a straight line EF intersecting two parallel straight lines AB, CD, has the same inclination to both, that is, it makes the external angle EGB equal to the internal angle EHD on the same side of it.



If  $EF$  be perp. to one  $AB$ , it will be perp. to the other  $CD$ ; if it cross one obliquely, it will also cross the other with the same obliquity.

### PROPOSITION I. THEOREM.

A straight line intersecting two parallel straight lines makes the alternate angles equal, and the two interior angles on the same side of it together equal to two right angles.—*See figure on next page.*

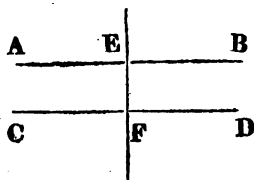
Let the straight line  $EF$  intersect the two parallel straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ ; the alternate angles  $AGH$ ,  $GHD$  are equal, and the angles  $BGH$ ,  $GHC$  are equal; and the two interior angles  $BGH$ ,  $GHD$ , on the same side of  $EF$ , are together equal to two right angles.

Since  $AB$ ,  $CD$  are parallel,  $EF$  has the same inclination to each of them, or the angles  $EGB$ ,  $EHD$  are equal (2 Cor. Def.); and because the two lines  $AB$ ,  $EF$  intersect each other, the vertical angles  $AGH$ ,  $EGB$  are equal (Prop. 15); consequently the angle  $AGH$  is equal to  $GHD$ . In like manner the angle  $BGH$  is equal to  $GHC$ .

Again, the angles  $BGE$ ,  $BGH$  are together equal to two right angles (Prop. 13), and the angle  $BGE$  is equal to  $GHD$ ; therefore the angles  $BGH$ ,  $GHD$  are together equal to two right angles. Therefore a straight line &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. If a straight line  $EF$  be perpendicular to one  $AB$  of two parallel straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , it is also perpendicular to the other  $CD$ .

For the angle  $AEF$  is equal to the alternate angle  $EFD$ . But  $AEF$  is a right angle, therefore  $EFD$  is a right angle, therefore  $EF$  is perp. to  $CD$ .



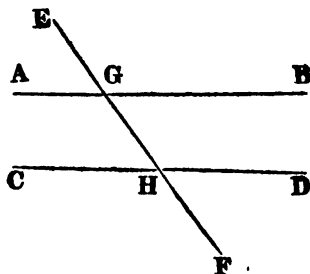
### PROPOSITION II. THEOREM.

If a straight line intersect two other straight lines, and make the alternate angles equal to each other, or make the two internal angles, on the same side of it,

together equal to two right angles; then those two lines are parallel to each other.

Let a straight line  $EF$  intersect two other straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , and make the alternate angles equal,  $\angle AGH = \angle GHD$ , and  $\angle BGH = \angle GHC$ ; or make the internal angles  $\angle BGH$ ,  $\angle GHD$ , on the same side of it, together equal to two right angles;  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$ .

For since the angle  $BGE$  is equal to  $\angle AGH$  (Prop. 15), it is also equal to the angle  $\angle GHD$ ; therefore  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$  (2 Cor. Def.).



Again, because the angles  $\angle BGH$ ,  $\angle GHD$  are together equal to two right angles, and the angles  $\angle BGH$ ,  $\angle BGE$  are together equal to two right angles (Prop. 13); the angle  $\angle BGE$  is equal to  $\angle GHD$ ; therefore  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$ . Therefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D.

*Otherwise.* For if they were not parallel the alternate angles would not be equal, nor the two internal angles on the same side together equal to two right angles.

Cor. Two straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , which are perpendicular to the same straight line  $EF$ , are parallel to each other.—See the second figure.

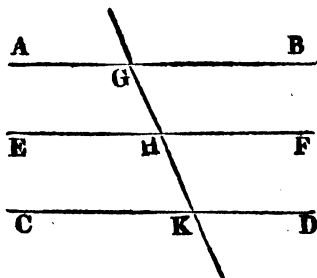
For the angles  $\angle AEF$ ,  $\angle EFD$  are equal, because they are right angles. But they are alternate angles, therefore  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$ .

### PROPOSITION III. THEOREM.

Straight lines which are parallel to the same straight line are parallel to one another.

Let two straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be parallel to the same straight line  $EF$ ; they are parallel to each other.

Draw GK intersecting the three straight lines AB, EF, CD; then the angle AGH is equal to the alternate angle GHF (Prop. 1), and the angle HKD is equal to GHF (2 Cor. Def.); therefore the angle AGH is equal to the alternate angle HKD, therefore AB is parallel to CD (Prop. 2). Therefore straight lines &c. Q. E. D.



Bezout, an eminent mathematician, calls 2 Cor. Def. a proposition, and demonstrates it as follows.

#### PROPOSITION IV. THEOREM.

If a straight line intersect two parallel straight lines, the angles which it makes with them on the same side, are equal to each other.—*See figure, Prop. 2.*

Let EF intersect the parallel lines AB, CD; the angles BGE, DHE, or the angles AGH, CHF, which it makes with them, on the same side, are equal.

For the parallels AB, CD, having no inclination to each other, must be equally inclined, on the same side, to every line with which they are compared.

END OF BOOK I.



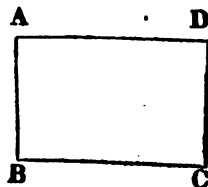
# ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY.

## BOOK II.

### *Definitions and Preliminary Observations.*

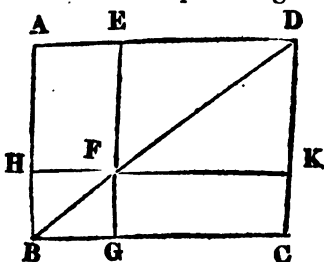
I. EVERY right angled parallelogram, or *rectangle*, is said to be contained by any two of the straight lines which are about one of the right angles. Thus, the right angled parallelogram AC is called the rectangle contained by AD and DC, or by AD and AB, &c.

For the sake of brevity, instead of the *rectangle contained* by AD and DC, we shall simply say the rectangle AD, DC, placing a point between the two sides of the rectangle. Instead of the square of a line, as AD, we may write AD<sup>2</sup>.



$(AD + DC) : (AD - DC)$ , or  $\overline{AD + DC} . \overline{AD - DC}$ , signifies the rectangle contained by the sum and difference of AD and DC.

II. In every parallelogram either of the two parallelograms about a diameter, together with the two complements, are called a gnomon. Thus, the parallelogram HG, together with the complements AF, FC, are the gnomon of the parallelogram AC. This gnomon may also, for the sake of brevity, be called the gnomon AGK, or EHC.

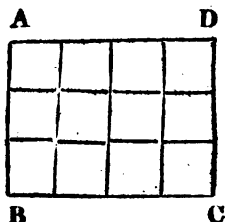


All lines are measured by other lines. A certain line, arbitrarily assumed, is called *unity*; and the length of every other line is represented by the number of lines called *units*, which are contained in that line. Thus, if a line of one inch in length be called unity, the length of any other line as a cubit, is mea-

K

sured by the number of units or inches which it contains. If the cubit contains 21 lines, each an inch long, then the cubit is 21 inches long; or, more properly, the ratio of the line called a cubit to the line called an inch, is that of the number 21 to the number 1. In this manner lines are compared with lines. But lines cannot be compared with surfaces, nor with solids; because a line, a surface, and a solid are magnitudes of different kinds, and therefore cannot be compared together.—LUDLAM.

Surfaces are compared with, and are measured by other surfaces. If the length and breadth of a rectangle ABCD be each divided into inches, and if lines be drawn through all the points of division parallel to the sides of the rectangle, the surface of the rectangle will be divided into squares, whose sides will be one inch in length. The surface of the whole figure will be measured by the number of the squares (called square inches, or superficial inches) which it contains.



Now the number of square inches in the surface will be found by multiplying the number of linear inches contained in one side of the rectangle by the number of linear inches contained in the other side. For there will be as many square inches in each row of squares as there are linear inches in one side of the rectangle, and as many such rows of squares as there are linear inches in the other side. This is manifest by inspection of the figure. Suppose the length of such a rectangle to be 4 inches and the breadth 3; then the whole surface contains 12 square inches; that is, the whole surface of this rectangle is to the surface of a square whose side is one inch, in the ratio of the number 12 to the number 1. In this manner are surfaces compared with surfaces; but they cannot be compared with lines nor solids.

LUDLAM.

Hence we can find the area of any parallelogram, or of any plane triangle. All parallelograms on the same base and between the same parallels are equal (35. 1.), whether they be right or oblique angled. Let  $a$  and  $b$  denote the number of feet (or any other linear measure) in the base and altitude of any parallelogram, then will  $a \times b$  denote the number of square feet in its surface. Again, a triangle is half of a parallelogram on the same base and between the same parallels (41. 1.), and all triangles on the same base and between the same parallels are equal (37. 1.); consequently  $\frac{1}{2} a b$  will denote the number of square feet in any plane triangle. Hence the surface of any parallelogram is represented by the product

of the linear units in the base and altitude; and the surface of any plane triangle by half the same product.

Cor. If  $a = b$ , then  $AB = BC$ , and the rectangle becomes a square. In this case  $a \times b = a \times a$ , or  $a^2$ . Therefore the surface of a square is expressed by the second power of the number denoting its side. ED.

Hence it follows that such rectangles will be represented by the product of the multiplication of the number of lines, called units, in one side, by the number of lines, called units, in the other side. That is, whatever ratio any two rectangles have to each other, the same will be the ratio of the two products of the multiplication of the number of lines, called units, in their sides respectively. Hence rectangles in geometry and products in arithmetic are often put for each other, and the terms are applied promiscuously, though improperly. Consequently, what is proved concerning the equality of certain rectangles in the second book, will also be true of the products of the multiplication of the number of lines, called units, in their bases and altitudes. Hence, if the number of lines, called units, in the side of a rectangle, or the different parts into which the side is divided, be represented algebraically by letters, most of the propositions in the second book may be concisely and easily demonstrated by the rules of algebra. In the following propositions the letters  $a, b, x$ , &c. may represent any numbers whatever, as well as lines. LUDLAM.

PROPOSITION A. THEOREM. ED.

Of any two unequal magnitudes, or quantities, if the sum and difference be added together, half the aggregate will be the greater quantity; and if the difference be subtracted from the sum, half the remainder will be the less quantity.

Let AD, DB be two unequal magnitudes; the greater magnitude AD is equal to half the aggregate of  $AD + DB$  and  $AD - DB$ ; and the less magnitude DB is equal to half the remainder of  $(AD + DB) - (AD - DB)$ .

Let AD, DB be placed in the same straight line AB. Bisect AB in O, then AO is the semi-sum of AD and DB. Make  $AE = BD$ , then DE is the difference of AD, DB, and OE = OD is the semi-difference of AD, DB. Now  $AO + OD = AD$ , the greater magnitude, and  $AO - OD = BO - OD = DB$ , the less. But  $AO + OD = \frac{1}{2} AB + \frac{1}{2} DE = \frac{1}{2} (AB + DE)$

(Propor. 23), and  $AO - OD = \frac{1}{2} AB = \frac{1}{2} DE = \frac{1}{2} (AB - DE)$ . Therefore, of any two &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. 1. If the semi-sum of two magnitudes be subtracted from the greater magnitude, the remainder is the semi-difference. For  $AD - AO = OD$ .

Cor. 2. The distance of the point of section from the middle of the line is equal to half the difference of the two segments. For  $DO = \frac{1}{2} DE = \frac{1}{2} (AD - DB)$ .

Cor. 3. The greater segment is equal to the sum of half the line and the distance of the point of section from the middle of the line, and the less segment is equal to the difference between half the line and the distance of the point of section from the middle of the line. For  $AD = AO + OD$ , and  $BD = BO - OD$ .

*Algebraically.* Let  $s$  denote the sum of any two unequal magnitudes or quantities,  $x$  the greater quantity,  $y$  the less, and  $d$  their difference; then will  $x + y = s$ , and  $x - y = d$ . Add the two equations together, then  $2x = s + d$ ,  $\therefore x = \frac{1}{2}(s + d)$ , which is the first part of the prop.

Again, subtract the second equation from the first, then  $2y = s - d$ ,  $\therefore y = \frac{1}{2}(s - d)$ , which is the second part.

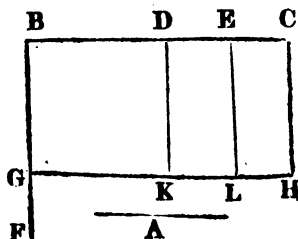
### PROPOSITION I. THEOREM.

If there be two straight lines, one of which is divided into any number of parts, the rectangle contained by the two lines is equal to the sum of the rectangles contained by the whole line and the several parts of the divided line.

Let A and BC be two straight lines, and let BC be divided into any parts in the points D, E; the rectangle A.BC is equal to the sum of the several rectangles A.BD, A.DE, A.EC, or  $A.BC = A.BD + A.DE + A.EC$ .

From B draw BF perp. to BC, and make BG equal to A; through G draw GH parallel to BC (S1. 1), and through D, E, C draw DK, EL, CH parallel to BG; then BH, BK, DL, and EH are rectangles, and  $BH = BK + DL + EH$ .

But  $BH = BG.BC = A.BC$ , because  $BG = A$ ; and  $BK = BG.BD = A.BD$ ; and  $DL =$



DK.DE = A.DE, because DK = BG = A (34. 1). In like manner EH = A.EC. Therefore A.BC = A.BD + A.DE + A.EC. Therefore, if there be two &c. Q. E. D.

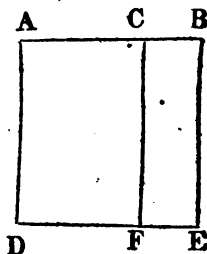
*Algebraically.* Let  $s$  denote the whole line BC, and  $a, b, c$ , the several parts BD, DE, EC; then  $s = a + b + c$ . Let  $x$  denote the line A. Multiply the equation by  $x$ , then  $sx = ax + bx + cx$ , which is the prop.

## PROPOSITION II. THEOREM.

If a straight line be divided into any two parts, the sum of the rectangles contained by the whole line and each of the parts is equal to the square of the whole line.

Let the line AB be divided into any two parts in the point C; the sum of the rectangles AB.BC and AB.AC is equal to the square of AB, or  $AB.AC + AB.BC = AB^2$ .

On AB describe the square AE (46. 1), and through C draw CF parallel to BE (31. 1); then AF = CE = AE. But AF = AD.AC = AB.AC, because AD = AB; and CE = BE.BC = AB.BC; and AE = AB<sup>2</sup>. Therefore AB.AC + AB.BC = AB<sup>2</sup>. Therefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D.



*Algebraically.* Let  $s$  denote the whole line, and  $a$  and  $b$  the two parts; then  $a + b = s$ . Multiply this equation by  $s$ , then  $as + bs = ss$ , which is the prop.

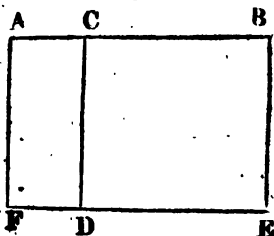
*Scholium.* This prop. is a particular case of the first; for if  $s$  be divided into the parts  $a$  and  $b$ , and  $x$  be equal to  $s$ , then  $sx = ax + bx$  becomes  $ss = as + bs$ .

## PROPOSITION III. THEOREM.

If a straight line be divided into any two parts, the rectangle contained by the whole line and one of the parts is equal to the square of that part together with the rectangle contained by the two parts.

Let the line AB be divided into two parts in the point C; the rectangle AB.BC is equal to the square of BC together with the rectangle AC.BC, or  $AB.BC = BC^2 + AC.BC$ .

On BC describe the square CE (46. 1); produce ED to F, and through A draw AF parallel to CD (31. 1); then  $AE = AD + CE$ . But  $AE = AB \cdot BE = AB \cdot BC$ , because  $BE = BC$ ; and  $AD = AC \cdot CD = AC \cdot CB$ ; and  $CE = BC^2$ . Therefore  $AB \cdot BC = BC^2 + AC \cdot CB$ . Therefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D.



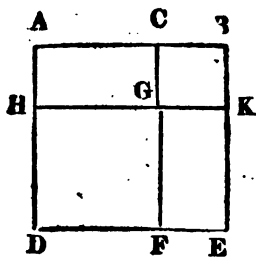
*Algebraically.* Let  $s$  denote the whole line, and  $a$  and  $b$  the two parts; then  $s = a + b$ . Multiply this equation by  $b$ , then  $sb = ab + bb$ , which is the prop.

#### PROPOSITION IV. THEOREM.

If a straight line be divided into any two parts, the square of the whole line is equal to the squares of the two parts together with twice the rectangle contained by the parts.

Let the line AB be divided into two unequal parts in the point C, or rather, let AC, BC be two unequal lines, and let AB be their sum; the square of AB is equal to the sum of the squares of AC, CB, with twice the rectangle contained by AC, CB; that is,  $AB^2 = AC^2 + CB^2 + 2AC \cdot CB$ .

On AB and BC describe the squares AE and CK (46. 1). Produce CG and KG to meet the sides of the square AE in F and H. Now the square described on AB consists of four parts. The first part is the square CK described on BC; the second is FH or the square on AC, for CF and KH, being parallel to the sides of the square AE, are equal, therefore if the equal parts CG and KG be taken from them, the remainders GF and GH will be equal; and they are also equal to HD and DF (34. 1); wherefore the figure FH is equilateral. But the angle HDF is a right angle, therefore FH is a square (33 Def.).



The two figures AG, GE are each equal to a rectangle under AC, CB, because  $HG = GF$ , and  $KG = BC = CG$ . Hence  $HF + CK + AG + GE = AE$ , or  $AB^2 = AC^2 + CB^2 + 2AC \cdot CB$ . Wherefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D. Ep.

**COR. 1.** From the demonstration it is manifest that the parallelograms about the diagonal of a square are squares. Suppose  $BD$  to be drawn, then it has been proved that  $CK$  and  $HF$  are squares.

**COR. 2.** The square of the sum of two lines,  $AC$ ,  $CB$ , is greater than the sum of their squares by twice the rectangle contained by those lines. For this is the prop. in different words. ED.

**COR. 3.** If a straight line be divided into two equal parts, the square of the whole line will be equal to four times the square of half the line.

If  $AC = CB$ , then

$$AB^2 = AC^2 + AC^2 + 2AC.AC = 4AC^2. \quad \text{ED.}$$

*Algebraically.* Let  $s$  denote the whole line, and  $a$  and  $b$  the two parts; then  $s = a + b$ . Square both sides of the equation, then  $ss = aa + 2ab + bb$ , which is the prop.

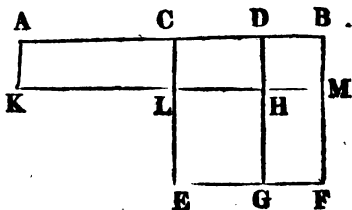
**COR.** If the two parts be equal, or  $a = b$ , then  $ss = 4aa$ , that is, the square of a line, or of any number, is four times the square of its half.

### PROPOSITION V. THEOREM.

If a straight line be divided into two unequal parts, the rectangle contained by their sum and difference is equal to the difference of their squares.

Let the straight line  $AD$  be divided into two unequal parts in the point  $C$ , and let  $AC$  be the greater part; the rectangle  $(AC + CD) \cdot (AC - CD)$  is equal to  $AC^2 - CD^2$ .

Produce  $AD$ , and take  $CB = AC$ ; then  $AD = AC + CD$ , and  $DB = AC - CD$ . On  $CB$  describe the square  $CF$ ; through  $D$  draw  $DG$  parallel to  $BF$ ; take  $BM = BD$ ; draw  $MK$  parallel to  $AB$ , and  $AK$  parallel to  $CE$ . Then  $LG$  is a square (33 Def.), and is equal to  $CD^2$ .



Because  $CH = HF$  (43. 1),  $CM = DF$ ; and because  $AL = CM$  (36. 1),  $AL = DF$ , therefore  $AH = CH + DF =$  gnomon  $CMG$ . But  $AH = AD \cdot DH = AD \cdot DB$ , because  $DH = DB$  (1 Cor. 4. 2); therefore the gnomon  $CMG = AD \cdot DB$ . But

$CMG = CF - LG = AC^2 - CD^2$ ; therefore  $AD \cdot DB = AC^2 - CD^2$ . Wherefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. 1. The rectangle contained by the sum and difference of two unequal straight lines  $AC$ ,  $CD$ , is equal to the difference of their squares; that is,  $(AC + CD) \cdot (AC - CD) = AC^2 - CD^2$ . This cor. is the prop. in different words.

Cor. 2 If a straight line, or number, be divided into any two unequal parts, and into other two unequal parts, &c. in pairs; then, of all the rectangles contained by any pairs of segments the greatest is the square described on half the line.

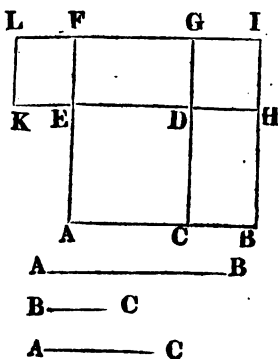
For  $AD \cdot DB = AC^2 - CD^2$ , therefore the rect.  $AD \cdot DB$  is always less than  $AC^2$  by  $CD^2$ , and constantly increases as  $DC^2$  decreases, till the point  $D$  coincide with  $C$ , and then  $AD \cdot DB$  becomes  $AC \cdot CB$ , or  $AC^2$ . Eo.

### PROPOSITION VII. THEOREM.

The square of the difference of any two unequal straight lines is less than the sum of their squares by twice the rectangle contained by those lines.

Let  $AB$  and  $BC$  be two unequal lines, of which  $AB$  is the greater, and let  $AC$  be their difference; the square of  $AC$  is less than the sum of the squares of  $AB$  and  $BC$  by twice the rectangle under  $AB$  and  $BC$ , that is,  $AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2 - 2AB \cdot BC$ .

Place  $AC$  on  $AB$ ; on  $AB$  and  $AC$  describe the squares  $AL$  and  $AD$  (46. 1); produce  $AE$  and  $CD$  to  $F$  and  $G$ ; produce  $ED$  and  $FG$  to  $H$  and  $I$ , and indefinitely to  $K$  and  $L$ ; in  $IL$  take  $FL = BC$ , and complete the square  $LE$ . The sides of the rectangle  $BG$  are equal to  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ; and the sides of the rectangle  $GK$  are also equal to  $AB$ ,  $BC$ , for  $GF = AC$  (34. 1), and  $FL$  or  $LK = BC$ ; therefore  $GL = AB$ , and  $LK$  or  $GD = BC$ . Therefore the rectangles  $BG$  and  $GK$  are equal to each other, and to the rectangle under  $AB$ ,  $BC$ . Therefore  $BG + GK = 2AB \cdot BC$ . Now if  $BG + GK$  be taken from the





whole figure ABILKE, there will remain AD, that is,  $AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2 - 2AB \cdot BC$ . Therefore, the square &c. Q. E. D.

**COR. 1.** If a straight line AB be divided into any two parts AC, CB, the squares of the whole line and of one of the parts are together equal to twice the rectangle contained by the whole line and that part together with the square of the other part. That is,  $AB^2 + BC^2 = 2AB \cdot BC + AC^2$ , by adding  $2AB \cdot BC$  to the two equals in the prop.

**COR. 2.** Hence, the sum of the squares of any two unequal lines is equal to twice the rectangle contained by those lines together with the square of their difference.

*Algebraically.* Let  $a$  denote the greater of any two unequal lines,  $b$  the less, and  $d$  the difference; then  $d = a - b$ , and  $dd = (a - b)^2 = aa - 2ab + bb$ .

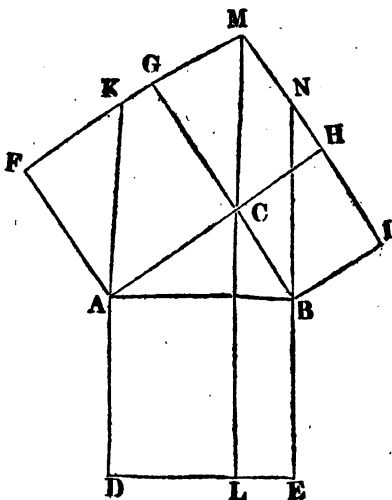
# PROPOSITION B. THEOREM.

*This is Prop. 47. 1.*

In any right angled triangle the square described on the hypotenuse is equal to both the squares described on the other two sides.

Let ABC be a right angled triangle, having the right angle ACB, and let the squares AE, FC, CI be described on the three sides AB, AC, BC;  $AE = FC + CI$ .

Through C draw ML parallel to AD, meeting FG produced in M, and produce DA to meet FG in K. Because BAD is a right angle, its adjacent angle BAK is a right angle (13. 1). From the right angles BAK, CAF take the common angle CAK, and there remain the equal angles BAC, FAK. Consequently the triangles BAC, FAK, having the side  $AC = AF$ , are equal in all respects (A. 1). Thus,  $AB = AK$ , or  $AD = AK$ ; therefore the parallelograms AL, AM, which are on equal bases AD, AK, and between the



L

same parallels  $DK, LM$ , are equal (36. 1). But the square  $FC$  is equal to the parallelogram  $AM$ , because they stand on the same base  $AC$  and between the same parallels  $AC, FM$  (35. 1). Consequently the paral.  $AL =$  square  $FC$ . In the same manner it may be demonstrated that the paral.  $BL$  is equal to the square  $CL$ . Hence  $AE = CF + CL$ . Therefore, in any &c. Q. E. D. WEST.

**COR. 1.** The square described on one of the sides of a right angled triangle is equal to the difference of the squares described on the hypotenuse and the other side.

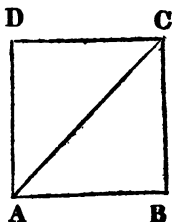
For  $AC^2 + BC^2 = AB^2$ . From these equals take  $BC^2$ , then  $AC^2 = AB^2 - BC^2$ . ED.

**COR. 2.** If a square  $AE$  be described on the hypotenuse  $AB$  of a right angled triangle  $ABC$ , and a perpendicular  $CL$  from the right angle  $C$  meet the opposite side  $DE$  of the square  $AE$ , the perpendicular will divide the square into two rectangles  $AL, BL$ , which are equal to the squares of the sides  $AC, BC$  adjacent to them. ED.

**COR. 3.** If two right angled triangles have two sides of one triangle equal to two corresponding sides of the other, they are equal in all respects.

**COR. 4.** The square described on the diagonal of a square is double of that square.

Let  $ABCD$  be a square, and  $AC$  its diagonal. Because the triangle  $ABC$  is right angled and isosceles,  $AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2 = 2AB^2$ .

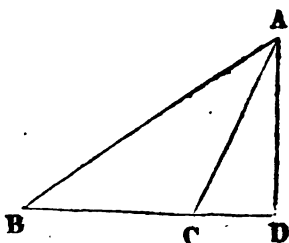


*Scholium.* Because  $AC^2 = 2AB^2$ ,  $AC^2 : AB^2 :: 2 : 1$ ,  $\therefore AC : AB :: \sqrt{2} : 1$ . Now since the value of  $\sqrt{2}$  cannot be exactly expressed in numbers,  $\sqrt{2}$  and 1 are said to be incommensurable quantities; consequently the diagonal of a square is incommensurable with its side; that is, the side and the diagonal of a square have no finite ratio.

PROPOSITION XII. THEOREM.

In any obtuse angled triangle if a perpendicular be drawn from either of the two acute angles to the opposite side produced, the square of the side subtending the obtuse angle is greater than the sum of the squares of the two sides containing it by twice the rectangle contained by the base and its external part intercepted between the perpendicular and the obtuse angle.

Let ABC be a triangle, having an obtuse angle ACB, and from the point A let AD be drawn perp. to BC produced (12. 1); the square of AB is greater than the squares of AC, CB, by twice the rectangle BC.CD; or  $AB^2 = BC^2 + AC^2 + 2BC.CD$ .

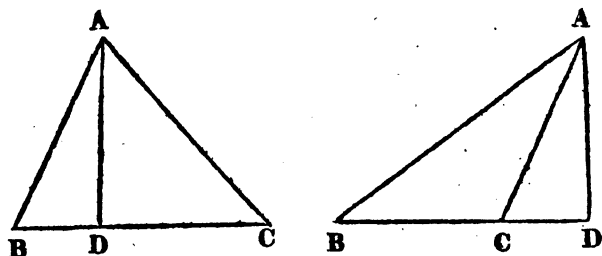


For  $BA^2 = BD^2 + DA^2$  (B. 2) or  $BC + CD^2 + AD^2$ , because  $BD = BC + CD$ . But  $BC + CD^2 = BC^2 + 2BC.CD + CD^2$  (4. 2). Hence  $BA^2 = BC^2 + 2BC.CD + CD^2 + DA^2$ . But  $CD^2 + DA^2 = CA^2$ ; therefore, by putting equals for equals,  $BA^2 = BC^2 + 2BC.CD + CA^2$  or  $BC^2 + AC^2 + 2(BC.CD)$ . Therefore, in any &c. Q. E. D.

PROPOSITION XIII. THEOREM.

In any triangle the square of the side subtending an acute angle is less than the sum of the squares of the two sides containing that angle, by twice the rectangle contained by either of those sides and the distance between the acute angle and the perpendicular drawn from the opposite angle to that side.

Let ABC be any triangle, and the angle at B one of its acute angles; on BC, one of the sides containing B, let fall the perp. AD from the opposite angle A; the square of AC, opposite to B, is less than the squares of CB, BA, by twice the rectangle CB.BD, or  $AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2 - 2BC.BD$ .



Because the angle at D is right,  $AC^2 = AD^2 + DC^2$  (B. 2). But  $AD^2 = AB^2 - BD^2$  (1 Cor. B. 2), and  $DC^2 = \overline{BC - BD}^2$ , or  $\overline{BD - BC}^2$ , according as the angle ACB is acute or obtuse, that is,  $DC^2 = BC^2 + BD^2 - 2BC \cdot BD$  (7. 2). Therefore, by adding the last two equals,  $AD^2 + DC^2$ , or  $AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2 - 2BC \cdot BD$ . Therefore, in any triangle &c. Q. E. D. ED.

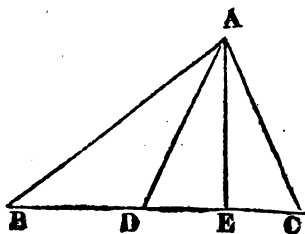
*Scholium.* From Prop. B, 12 and 13 it is manifest, that any angle of a triangle is right, obtuse, or acute, according as the square of the side opposite to it is equal to, greater, or less than the sum of the squares of the sides containing it. ED.

### PROPOSITION C. THEOREM.

If a straight line be drawn from any angle of a triangle to the middle of the opposite side, the sum of the squares of the other two sides will be double of the sum of the squares of that line and of half the base.

Let ABC be a triangle, and let any side BC be bisected in D, and from D let DA be drawn to the opposite angle; the squares of BA and AC are together double of the squares of BD and DA, or  $BA^2 + AC^2 = 2BD^2 + 2DA^2$ .

From A draw AE perp. to BC, then  $AB^2 = BD^2 + DA^2 + 2BD \cdot DE$  (12. 2), or  $DC^2 + DA^2 + 2DC \cdot DE$ , and  $AC^2 = DC^2 + DA^2 - 2DC \cdot DE$  (13. 2); therefore, by adding these equals,  $AB^2 + AC^2 = 2DC^2 + 2DA^2$ . Therefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D.

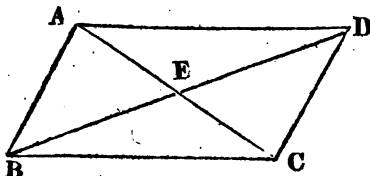


PROPOSITION D. THEOREM.

The sum of the squares of the two diagonals of any parallelogram is equal to the sum of the squares of the four sides.

Let ABCD be a paral., of which the diagonals are AC and BD; the sum of the squares of AC and BD is equal to the sum of the squares of AB, BC, CD, DA.

Let AC and BD intersect each other in E, then they will bisect each other in E (I. 1). Since BD is bisected in E,  $AB^2 + AD^2 = 2BE^2 + 2AE^2$  (C. 2); and for the same reason  $CD^2 + CB^2 = 2BE^2 + 2EC^2 = 2BE^2 + 2AE^2$ , because  $EC = AE$ ; therefore  $AB^2 + AD^2 + DC^2 + BC^2 = 4BE^2 + 4AE^2$ . But  $4BE^2 = BD^2$  (3 Cor. 4. 2), and  $4AE^2 = AC^2$ , because BD and AC are both bisected in E; therefore  $AB^2 + AD^2 + CD^2 + BC^2 = BD^2 + AC^2$ . Therefore, the sum &c. Q. E. D.



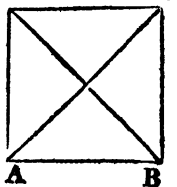
PROPOSITION E. THEOREM.

Ed.

The sum of the squares of the two diagonals of a square is equal to the sum of the squares of the four sides.

Let ABCD be a square, of which the diagonals are AC, BD; the sum of the squares of AC, BD is equal to the sum of the squares of AB, BC, CD, DA, or to  $4AB^2$ .

For  $BD^2 = AB^2 + AD^2 = 2AB^2$  (B. 2), and  $AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2 = DC^2 + BC^2 = 2AB^2$ . Consequently, by adding equals to equals,  $AC^2 + BD^2 = DC^2 + BC^2 + AB^2 + AD^2 = 4AB^2$ . Therefore, the sum &c. Q. E. D.



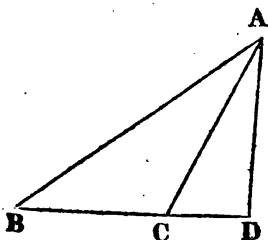
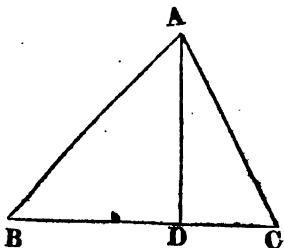
PROPOSITION F. THEOREM.

Ed.

If a perpendicular be drawn from any angle of a triangle to the opposite side, the rectangle contained by

the sum and difference of the other two sides is equal to the rectangle contained by the sum and difference of the segments of the base made by the perpendicular.

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle, having the side  $AB$  greater than  $AC$ , and  $AD$  a perp. from the angle  $A$  to the opposite side  $BC$ ; then  $AB + AC \cdot AB - AC = BD + DC \cdot BD - DC$ .



For  $AB^2 = BD^2 + DA^2$  (B. 2),  
and  $AC^2 = DC^2 + DA^2$ ;  
therefore the differences of those two equals are equal, or  
 $AB^2 - AC^2 = BD^2 - DC^2$ .

But  $AB^2 - AC^2 = \overline{AB + AC} \cdot \overline{AB - AC}$  (5. 2),  
and  $AD^2 - DC^2 = \overline{BD + DC} \cdot \overline{BD - DC}$ ;  
therefore  $\overline{AB + AC} \cdot \overline{AB - AC} = \overline{BD + DC} \cdot \overline{BD - DC}$ .  
Therefore, if a perp. &c. Q. E. D.

**COR. 1.** If a perpendicular be drawn from any angle of a triangle to the opposite side, the difference of the squares of the other two sides is equal to the difference of the squares of the segments of the base made by the perpendicular. For, by the dem.  $AB^2 - AC^2 = BD^2 - DC^2$ .

**COR. 2.** If a perpendicular be drawn from any angle of a triangle to the opposite side or base, the difference between the squares of the other two sides, or the rectangle under their sum and difference, is equal to twice the rectangle contained by the base and the distance of the perpendicular from the middle of the base.—(See Fig. of Prop. C.).

Let  $D$  be the middle of the base  $BC$ , and let  $AE$  be perp. to  $BC$ ; then  $AB^2 - AC^2 = BE^2 - EC^2$  (Cor. 1), or  $(BE + EC) \cdot (BE - EC)$ . But  $BE - EC = DE + DC - EC = 2DE + EC - EC = 2DE$ . Consequently  $AB^2 - AC^2 = BC \cdot 2DE = 2(BC \cdot DE)$ , or  $(AB + AC) \cdot (AB - AC) = 2(BC \cdot DE)$ . *Ed.*

**COR. 3.** If a perpendicular be drawn from any angle of a triangle to the opposite side, that side will be to the sum of the other two sides, as half their difference is to the distance of the perpendicular from the middle of the base.

For  $2BC \cdot DE = (AB + AC) \cdot (AB - AC)$ , therefore  $2BC : AB + AC :: AB - AC : DE$  (Propor. 33), therefore  $BC : AB + AC :: \frac{1}{2}(AB - AC) : DE$  (Propor. 30). ED.

*Scholium.* If the perpendicular be always drawn from the greatest angle of any triangle to the opposite side, the proposition will be reduced to one case only, and its application to practice will be more convenient. The proposition will then be expressed as follows.

If a perpendicular be drawn from the greatest angle of a triangle to the opposite side, the greatest side will be to the sum of the other two sides, as their difference is to the difference of the segments of the greatest side made by the perpendicular.

By means of this proposition, or Cor. 2 or 3, we can divide a triangle, of which all the sides are given, into two right angled triangles, by determining the segments of the base, and thence the position and length of the perpendicular. Thus, by the proposition, half the sum of the base and the fourth proportional is equal to the greater segment (A. 2), and half the difference between the base and the fourth proportional is equal to the less segment. ED.

## THE PRINCIPAL THEOREMS IN BOOK II.

---

Of any two unequal magnitudes, or quantities, if the sum and difference be added together, half the aggregate will be the greater quantity; and if the difference be subtracted from the sum, half the remainder will be the less quantity.

*Note.*—This prop. may be briefly expressed by signs as follows.

Of two unequal quantities half the sum + half the difference is equal to the greater quantity, and half the sum — half the difference is equal to the less.

If there be two straight lines, and if one of them be divided into any number of parts, the sum of the rectangles contained by the whole line and the several parts of the divided line is equal to the rectangle contained by the two whole lines.

If a straight line be divided into any two parts, the two rectangles contained by the whole line and each of the parts are together equal to the square of the whole line.

If a straight line be divided into any two parts, the rectangle contained by the whole line and one of the parts is equal to the rectangle contained by the two parts together with the square of the foresaid part.

If a straight line be divided into any two parts, the square of the whole line is equal to the squares of the two parts together with twice the rectangle contained by the two parts. Or, in other words, the square of the sum of two lines is greater than the sum of their squares by twice the rectangle contained by those lines.



If a straight line be divided into two equal parts, the square of the whole line is equal to four times the square of half the line.

The rectangle contained by the sum and difference of two lines is equal to the difference of their squares.

The square of the difference of any two lines is less than the sum of their squares by twice the rectangle contained by those lines.

In any right angled triangle the square described on the hypotenuse is equal to both the squares described on the other two sides.

If two right angled triangles have two sides of one triangle equal to two corresponding sides of the other, they are equal in all respects.

In any obtuse-angled triangle, if a perpendicular be drawn from either of the two acute angles to the opposite side produced, the square of the side subtending the obtuse angle is greater than the sum of the squares of the sides containing it by twice the rectangle under the base and the distance between the perpendicular and the obtuse angle.

In any triangle the square of the side subtending an acute angle is less than the sum of the squares of the two sides containing that angle by twice the rectangle under either of these sides and the distance between the acute angle and the perpendicular drawn from the opposite angle to that side.

If a straight line be drawn from any angle of a triangle to the middle of the opposite side, the sum of the squares of the other two sides will be double of the sum of the squares of that line and of half the base.

The sum of the squares of the two diagonals of any parallelogram is equal to the sum of the squares of the four sides.

If a perpendicular be drawn from the greatest angle of a triangle to the opposite side, the rectangle contained by the sum and difference of the other two sides is equal to the rectangle contained by the sum and difference of the segments of the base made by the perpendicular; or, the greatest side is to the sum of the other two sides, as their difference is to the difference of the segments of the greatest side made by the perpendicular.

If a perpendicular be drawn from any angle of a triangle to the opposite side, the difference of the squares of the other two sides is equal to the difference of the squares of the segments of the base made by the perpendicular.

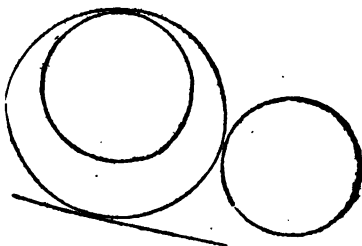
END OF BOOK II.

# ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY.

## BOOK III.

### DEFINITIONS.\*

1. A straight line is said to touch a circle, when it meets the circle, and, being produced, does not cut it. Such a line is usually called a tangent.

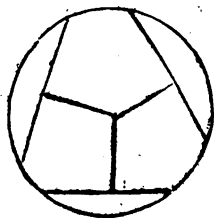


- A. A straight line drawn from any point without a circle to the concave part of the circumference is called a secant.

2. Circles are said to touch one another when they meet, but do not cut one another.

3. Straight lines are said to be equally distant from the centre of a circle, when the perpendiculars drawn to them from the centre are equal.

4. And the straight line on which the greater perpendicular falls is said to be farther from the centre.



- B. An arch of a circle is any part of the circumference.

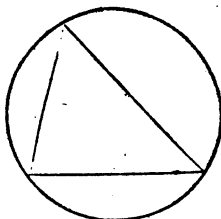
And the chord of any arch is the straight line joining the two extremities of the arch.

5. A segment of a circle is the figure contained by a straight line and the arch which it cuts off, or, it is the space included between an arch and its chord.



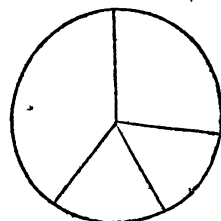
\* Numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 7, are explanations, not definitions.

6. An angle in a segment of a circle is the angle contained by two straight lines drawn from any point in the circumference of the segment to the extremities of the chord which is the base of the segment.



7. An angle is said to stand on the arch intercepted between the straight lines which contain the angle.

8. The sector of a circle is the figure contained by two straight lines drawn from the centre and the arch of the circumference between them.



C. If the radii, or the two straight lines containing the angle, be perpendicular to each other, or form a right angle, the sector is called a quadrant. *Ed.*

9. Similar segments of circles are those which contain equal angles.



### PROPOSITION I. PROBLEM.

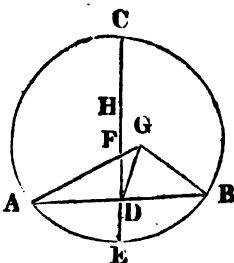
To find the centre of a given circle,—*See Note.*

Let ABC be the given circle; it is required to find its centre.

Draw any chord AB, and bisect it in D; from the point D draw DC perp. to AB, and produce it to E, and bisect CE in F; the point F is the centre of the circle ABC.

For, if F be not the centre of the circle, some other point either in the line CE, or out of it, must be the centre. Suppose the centre to be in the line CE, at the point H different from F. Then the radii HE, HC are equal. But the straight lines FC, FE are equal (by construction); and HC is less than FC (9 Ax.); therefore HC is less than FE. Much more then is HC less than HE. But HC and HE are supposed to be equal, which is impossible. Consequently the point H cannot be the centre of the circle.

Nor can the centre be a point out of the line CE. For, if possible, let G be the centre, and join GA, GD, GB; then, because DA is equal to DB, and DG is common to the two triangles ADG, BDG, and the base GA is equal to GB, because they are radii of the same circle, the angle ADG is equal to GDB (8. 1); therefore the angle GDB is a right angle. But FDB is also a right angle; wherefore the angle FDB is equal to GDB, the greater to the less, which is impossible. Therefore G is not the centre of the circle ABC.



Now since it has been proved that the centre of the circle is not in the line CE, at any point H different from F, nor out of CE, at any point G, the centre must be at the point F; that is, F is the centre of the circle. Which was to be found.\*

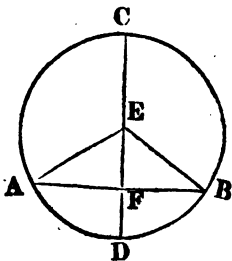
**Cor.** From this demonstration it is manifest, that if a straight line in a circle bisect another at right angles, the centre of the circle is in the line which bisects the other; and that if the bisecting line be bisected, the point of section will be the centre of the circle.

### PROPOSITION III. THEOREM.

In a circle if a radius or a diameter bisect a chord, it will cut the chord at right angles; and if it cut a chord at right angles, it will bisect the chord.

1. Let ABC be a circle, and let a diameter CD bisect any chord AB in the point F; CD cuts AB at right angles.

Take E the centre of the circle (1. 3), and join EA, EB. Then, because AF is equal to FB, and FE common to the two triangles AFE, BFE, and the base EA is equal to EB, the angle AFE is equal to BFE (8. 1), therefore each of the angles AFE, BFE is a right angle; wherefore the diameter CD, bisecting the chord AB, cuts it at right angles.



2. Again, let CD cut AB at right angles; CD also bisects AB.

\* The demonstration of this prop. in Playfair's Geometry is defective.

The same construction being made, because the radii  $EA$ ,  $EB$  are equal, the angle  $EAF$  is equal to  $EBF$ . But the right angles  $AFE$ ,  $BFE$  are equal. Hence the angle  $AEF$  is equal to  $BEF$  (2 Cor. 32. 1). But the side  $EF$  is common to the two triangles  $EAF$ ,  $EBF$ ; therefore the other sides are equal (A. 1); therefore  $AF$  is equal to  $FB$ . Wherefore, in a circle &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. If a radius, or a diameter, bisect a chord, it will also bisect the arch subtended by that chord.

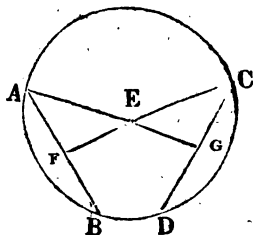
For the radii  $EA$ ,  $EB$  are equal, and also the angles  $AED$ ,  $BED$ ; therefore if the sector  $AED$  be supposed to revolve round the radius  $ED$  as an axis of motion, till the point  $A$  fall on  $B$ , and the radius  $EA$  coincide with  $EB$ , it is evident that the arch  $AD$  will coincide with  $BD$ ; therefore the arch  $AD$  is equal to  $BD$ , and the arch  $ADB$  is bisected by the radius  $ED$ . Ed.

#### PROPOSITION XIV. THEOREM.

Equal chords in a circle are equally distant from the centre; and chords in a circle which are equally distant from the centre are equal to one another.

1. Let the chords  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , in the circle  $ABDC$ , be equal to each other; they are equally distant from the centre.

Find the centre  $E$  of the circle, and from  $E$  draw  $EF$ ,  $EG$  perp. to the chords  $AB$ ,  $CD$ ; join  $AE$ ,  $EC$ . The right angled triangles  $AEF$ ,  $CEG$ , having the side  $AE$  equal to  $CE$ , and  $AF$  equal to  $CG$  (3. 3), are equal in all respects (3 Cor. B. 2). Thus, the perpendiculars  $EF$ ,  $EG$  are equal, and therefore the chords  $AB$ ,  $CD$  are equally distant from the centre  $E$ .



2. Next, let the chords  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be equally distant from the centre of the circle, that is, let the perpendiculars  $EF$ ,  $EG$  be equal;  $AB$  is equal to  $CD$ .

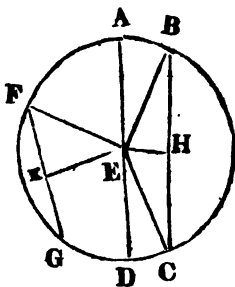
The right angled triangles  $AEF$ ,  $CEG$ , having the sides  $AE$ ,  $EF$  equal to the sides  $CE$ ,  $EG$ , each to each, are equal in all respects. Thus,  $AF$  is equal to  $CG$ , and therefore the doubles of these, or the chords  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , are equal (3. 3). Therefore, equal chords &c. Q. E. D. Ed.

PROPOSITION XV. THEOREM.

The diameter is the greatest straight line in a circle; and of all other lines that which is nearer to the centre is greater than one more remote; and the greater line is nearer to the centre than the less.

1. Let ABCD be a circle, of which the diameter is AD, and the centre E; and let BC be nearer to the centre than FG; AD is greater than any line BC, which is not a diameter, and BC is greater than FG.

From the centre draw EH perp. to BC, and EK perp. to FG; and join EB, EC, EF. Because AE is equal to EB, and ED to EC, AD is equal to EB and EC together. But EB, EC together are greater than BC (20. 1); wherefore AD is greater than BC.



Again, because BC is nearer to the centre than FG, EH is less than EK (4 Def. 3). Now BC is double of BH (3. 3), and FG is double of FK; and the squares of EH, HB together are equal to the squares of EK, KF together, because they are equal to the squares of the radii EB, EF (B. 2). But the square of EH is less than the square of EK, because EH is less than EK; therefore the square of BH is greater than the square of FK; therefore the line BH is greater than FK; therefore BC is greater than FG.

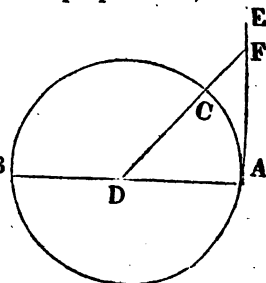
2. Next, let BC be greater than FG; BC is nearer to the centre than FG; that is, EH is less than EK. Because BC is greater than FG, BH is greater than FK. But the squares of BH, HE together are equal to the squares of FK, KE together, and the square of BH is greater than the square of FK; therefore the square of EH is less than the square of EK; therefore the line EH is less than EK, that is, BC is nearer to the centre than FG. Wherefore, the diameter &c. Q. E. D.

PROPOSITION XVI. THEOREM.

A straight line drawn perpendicular to the diameter of a circle, from one extremity of it, is a tangent to the circle.

Let  $ABC$  be a circle, the centre of which is  $D$ , and the diameter  $AB$ ; and let  $AE$  be drawn from  $A$  perp. to  $AB$ ;  $AE$  will touch the circle.

In  $AE$  take any point  $F$ , and join  $DF$ , cutting the circle in  $C$ . Because  $DAF$  is a right angle, it is greater than the angle  $AFD$  (3 Cor. 32. 1); therefore  $DF$  is greater than  $DA$  or  $DC$  (19. 1); therefore the point  $F$  is without the circle, and  $F$  is any point whatever in the line  $AE$ ; therefore  $AE$  falls without the circle, and meets it only in the point  $A$ . Therefore  $AE$  touches the circle. &c. Q. E. D.



Therefore, a straight line

*Otherwise.* Because  $DA$  is perp. to  $AE$ , it is the shortest distance of the point  $D$  from  $AE$  (C. 1); therefore any other point in  $AE$  is farther from  $D$  than  $A$  is, and consequently falls without the circle. Therefore  $AE$  falls without the circle, and meets it only in  $A$ .

Therefore, a straight line &c. Q. E. D.

Ed.

### PROPOSITION XVII. PROBLEM.

To draw a straight line from a given point, either without or in the circumference, which shall touch a given circle. That is, to draw a tangent to a circle.

First, let  $A$  be a given point without the given circle  $BCD$ ; it is required to draw a straight line from  $A$  which shall touch the circle.

Find the centre  $E$  of the circle (1. 3), and join  $AE$ ; from the centre  $E$ , at the distance  $EA$ , describe the circle  $AFG$ ; from the point  $D$  draw  $DF$  perp. to  $EA$ , and join  $EBF$  and  $AB$ ; then  $AB$  touches the circle  $BCD$ .

Because  $E$  is the centre of the circles  $BCD$  and  $AFG$ ,  $EA$  is equal to  $EF$ , and  $ED$  to  $EB$ ; therefore the two sides  $AE$ ,  $EB$  are equal to the two sides  $FE$ ,  $ED$ , each to each; and they



**PROPOSITION XVIII. THEOREM.**

Let the straight line DE touch the circle ABC in the point C; find the centre F, and join FC; FC is perp. to DE.

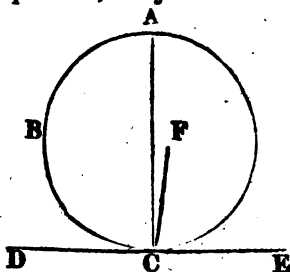
A diagram showing a circle with center  $F$ . A horizontal line  $DE$  is tangent to the circle at point  $C$ . A secant line  $BE$  passes through point  $G$  on the circle. Point  $A$  is on the upper circumference of the circle. Lines  $FC$  and  $FG$  are drawn from the center  $F$  to the points of tangency and secancy respectively.

**If a straight line touch a circle, and from the point of contact a straight line be drawn perpendicular to the tangent, the centre of the circle is in that line.**

**N**

Let the straight line  $DE$  touch the circle  $ABC$  in the point  $C$ , and from  $C$  let  $CA$  be drawn perp. to  $DE$ ; the centre of the circle is in  $CA$ .

For, if not, let  $F$  be the centre, if possible, and join  $CF$ . Because  $DE$  touches the circle  $ABC$ , and  $FC$  is drawn from the centre to the point of contact,  $FC$  is perp. to  $DE$  (18. 3); therefore  $FCE$  is a right angle. But  $ACE$  is also a right angle; therefore the angle  $FCE$  is equal to  $ACE$ , the less to the greater, which is impossible. Wherefore  $F$  is not the centre of the circle  $ABC$ . In like manner it may be shown that no other point which is not in  $CA$  is the centre; that is, the centre is in  $CA$ . Therefore, if a straight line &c. **Q. E. D.**

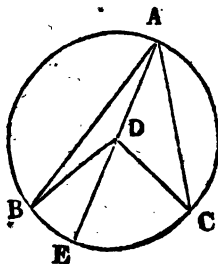


### PROPOSITION XX. THEOREM.

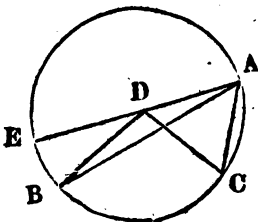
The angle at the centre of a circle is double of the angle at the circumference, both standing on the same arch.

Let  $ABC$  be a circle, and  $BDC$  an angle at the centre, and  $BAC$  an angle at the circumference, both standing on the same arch  $BC$ ; the angle  $BDC$  is double of  $BAC$ .

First, let  $D$ , the centre of the circle, be within the angle  $BAC$ ; through  $D$  draw  $ADE$ . Because  $DA$  is equal to  $DB$ , the angle  $DAB$  is equal to  $DBA$ ; therefore the angles  $DAB$ ,  $DBA$  together are double of the angle  $DAB$ . But the angle  $BDE$  is equal to both the angles  $DAB$ ,  $DBA$  (32. 1); therefore the angle  $BDE$  is double of  $DAB$ . For the same reason the angle  $CDE$  is double of  $CAD$ . Therefore the whole angle  $BDC$  is double of the whole angle  $BAC$ .



Again, let  $D$ , the centre of the circle, be without the angle  $BAC$ . Through  $D$  draw  $ADE$ . It may be demonstrated, as in the first case, that the angle  $CDE = 2CAE$  or  $2CAB + 2BAE$ , and the angle  $BDE = 2BAE$ . Take the latter equals from the former, then the angle  $BDC = 2CAB$ . Therefore, the angle &c. Q. E. D.\*

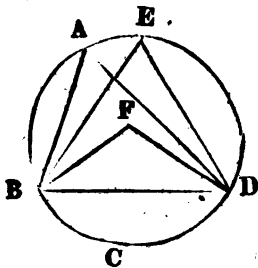


PROPOSITION XXI. THEOREM.

The angles at the circumference of a circle, standing on the same arch, are equal to one another.

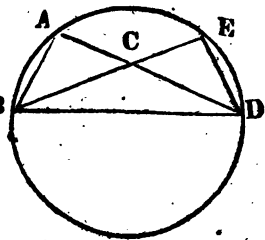
Let  $ABCD$  be a circle, and  $BAD$ ,  $BED$ , angles at the circumference, standing on the same arch  $BCD$ ; the angles  $BAD$ ,  $BED$  are equal to each other.

Take  $F$ , the centre of the circle. Let the segment  $BAED$  be greater than a semicircle, and join  $BF$ ,  $FD$ . The angle  $BFD$  at the centre is double of each of the angles  $BAD$ ,  $BED$  at the circumference, which stand on the same arch  $BCD$  (20. 3); therefore the angle  $BAD$  is equal to  $BED$  (7 Ax.).



Again, let the segment  $BAED$  be not greater than a semicircle, and let  $BAD$ ,  $BED$  be angles in it; they are equal to each other.

The angles  $BCA$ ,  $DCE$  are equal (15. 1), and the angles  $ABC$ ,  $EDC$  are equal by the former case; therefore the angles  $BAD$ ,  $BED$  are equal (2 Cor. 32. 1). Therefore, the angles &c. Q. E. D.  $ED$ .

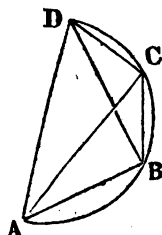
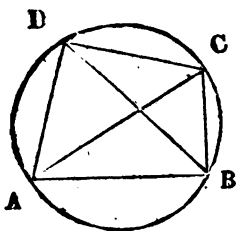


\* Euclid's demonstration of this case is faulty, for he assumes a prop. which has not been proved, and does not properly belong to Geometry.

## PROPOSITION XXII. THEOREM.

The two opposite angles of any quadrilateral figure described in a circle, or in a segment of a circle, are together equal to two right angles.

Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral figure described in the circle, or segment,  $ABCD$ ; any two of its opposite angles  $ABC$ ,  $ADC$  are together equal to two right angles.

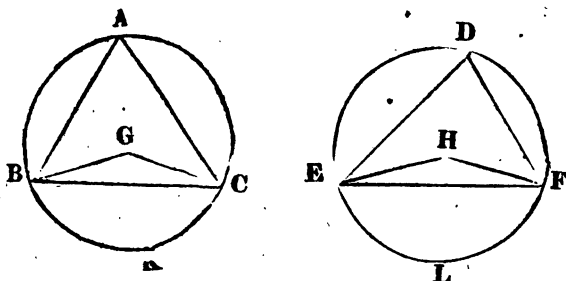


Draw the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$ . The angles  $CAB$ ,  $CDB$  are equal, because they stand on the same arch  $BC$  (21. 3); and the angles  $ACB$ ,  $ADB$  are equal, because they stand on the same arch  $AB$ ; therefore the whole angle  $ADC$  is equal to the two angles  $CAB$ ,  $ACB$ . To each of these equals add the angle  $ABC$ , then the two angles  $ABC$ ,  $ADC$  are equal to the three angles  $ABC$ ,  $CAB$ ,  $BCA$ . But these are together equal to two right angles (32. 1); therefore the angles  $ABC$ ,  $ADC$  are together equal to two right angles. In the same manner the angles  $BAD$ ,  $BCD$  may be shown to be equal to two right angles. Therefore, the opposite angles &c. Q. E. D.

## PROPOSITION XXVI. THEOREM.

In equal circles, if the angles at the centres or at the circumference be equal, the arches on which they stand are also equal.

Let  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  be equal circles, and let  $BGC$ ,  $EHF$  be equal angles at their centres  $G$ ,  $H$ ; and  $BAC$ ,  $EDF$  equal angles at their circumferences; the arch  $BKC$  is equal to the arch  $ELF$ .



Draw  $BC$ ,  $EF$ . Let the circle  $ABC$  be applied to  $DEF$ , so that the centre  $G$  may lie on  $H$ , and the radius  $GB$  on  $HE$ ; then the radius  $GC$  will coincide with its equal  $HF$ , because the angle  $BGC$  is equal to  $EHF$ . Now it is evident that the circle  $ABC$  will coincide with the equal circle  $DEF$ , and that the arch  $BKC$  will coincide with  $ELF$ , because the point  $B$  lies on  $E$ , and the point  $C$  on  $F$ .

Again, if the equal angles  $A$  and  $D$  at the circumferences be less than right angles, then, because the angles  $G$  and  $H$  at the centres are double of the equal angles  $A$  and  $D$  (20. 3), they are equal to each other, and therefore (by the first case) they stand on equal arches; therefore the angles  $A$  and  $D$  stand on equal arches.

CRESSWELL.

But if the angles  $A$  and  $D$  be not less than right angles, let them be bisected; then, as before, the arches which subtend their halves are equal, each to each; therefore the whole arches which subtend the whole angles are equal. Wherefore, in equal circles &c. Q. E. D.

CRESSWELL.

COR. 1. In the same manner it may be proved, that in the same circle equal angles stand on equal arches.

COR. 2. It is manifest that in the same circle, or in equal circles, the greater angle stands on the greater arch.

COR. 3. In the same circle, or in equal circles, equal chords are subtended by equal arches.

COR. 4. If a radius  $ED$  (Figure 3. 3) bisect a chord  $AB$ , it will also bisect the arch subtended by that chord. For the triangles  $AEF$  and  $BEF$ , being mutually equilateral, are equal in all respects; therefore the angle  $AEF = BEF$ , therefore, the arch  $AD = BD$ .

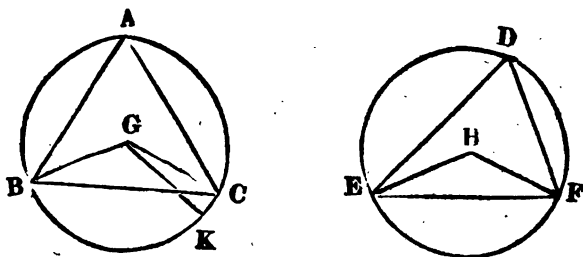
ED.

### PROPOSITION XXVII. THEOREM.

In equal circles the angles which stand on equal

arches are equal to one another, whether they be at the centres or at the circumferences of the circles.

Let the angles  $BGC$ ,  $EHF$  at the centres, and the angles  $BAC$ ,  $EDF$  at the circumferences of the equal circles  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$ , stand on the equal arches  $BC$ ,  $EF$ ; the angle  $BGC$  is equal to  $EHF$ , and the angle  $BAC$  to  $EDF$ .



If the angle  $BGC$  be equal to  $EHF$ , the angle  $A$  is equal to  $D$  (20. 3). But, if not, one of them is the greater. Let  $BGC$  be the greater, and at the point  $G$ , in the line  $BG$ , make the angle  $BGK$  equal to  $EHF$  (23. 1); then the arch  $BK$  is equal to the arch  $EF$  (26. 3). But the arch  $EF$  is equal to the arch  $BC$ ; therefore also the arch  $BK$  is equal to the arch  $BC$ , the less to the greater, which is impossible. Therefore the angle  $BGC$  is not unequal to  $EHF$ , that is,  $BGC$  is equal to  $EHF$ . But the angle  $A$  is half of the angle  $BGC$  (20. 3), and the angle  $D$  is half of the angle  $EHF$ ; therefore the angle  $A$  is equal to the angle  $D$ . Wherefore, in equal circles &c. Q. E. D.

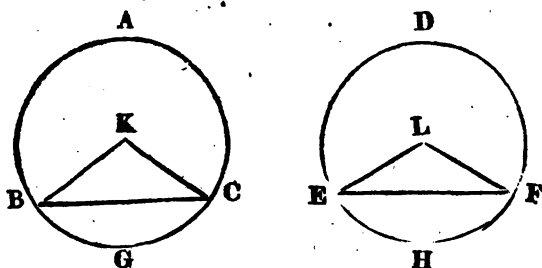
**COR. 1.** In the same circle the angles which stand on the same arch, or on equal arches, are equal to one another. Ed.

**COR. 2.** Hence it is evident that the angle which stands on the greater arch is the greater. Ed.

### PROPOSITION XXVIII. THEOREM.

In equal circles equal chords cut off equal arches, the greater arch equal to the greater, and the less arch equal to the less.

Let  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  be equal circles, and  $BC$ ,  $EF$  equal chords in them, which cut off the two greater arches  $BAC$ ,  $EDF$ , and the two less arches  $BGC$ ,  $EHF$ ; the greater arch  $BAC$  is equal to the greater  $EDF$ , and the less arch  $BGC$  is equal to the less  $EHF$ .



Take  $K, L$ , the centres of the circles, and draw  $BK, KC$ , and  $EL, LF$ . Because the circles are equal, their radii are equal; therefore  $BK, KC$  are equal to  $EL, LF$ . But the base  $BC$  is also equal to  $EF$ ; therefore the angle  $BKC$  is equal to  $ELF$ ; therefore the arch  $BGC$  is equal to the arch  $EHF$  (26.3). But the circumferences  $ABGC, DEHG$  are equal; therefore the remaining arches  $BAC, EDF$  are equal. Therefore, in equal circles &c.  $Q. E. D.$

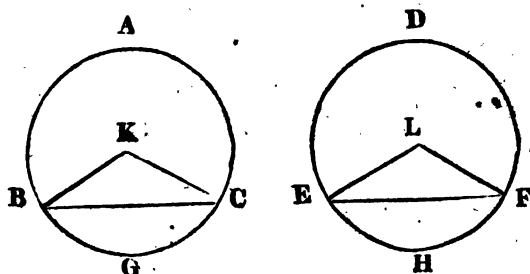
**Cor.** In the same circle equal chords cut off equal arches.

*Scholium.* This prop. is sometimes expressed thus. In equal circles equal chords subtend equal arches, the greater arch equal to the greater, and the less arch equal to the less.

### PROPOSITION XXIX. THEOREM.

In equal circles equal arches are subtended by equal chords.

Let  $ABC, DEF$  be equal circles, and  $BGC, EHF$  equal arches; join  $BC, EF$ ; the chords  $BC$  and  $EF$  are equal.



Take **K, L**, the centres of the circles, and draw **BK, KC**, and **EL, LF**. Because the arch **BGC** is equal to **EHF**, the angle **BKC** is equal to **ELF** (27. 3); and because the circles **ABC, DEF** are equal, their radii are equal; therefore **BK, KC** are equal to **EL, LF**; and they contain equal angles; therefore the base **BC** is equal to **EF**. Therefore, in equal circles &c. **Q. E. D.**

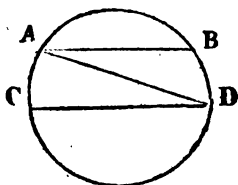
Cor. In the same circle equal arches are subtended by equal chords.

### PROPOSITION A. THEOREM. Ed.

Parallel chords in a circle intercept equal arches.

Let the chords **AB, CD** be parallel; the arches **AC, BD**, which they intercept, are equal.

Draw **AD**. Because the straight lines **AB, CD** are parallel, the alternate angles **BAD, ADC** are equal (29. 1), therefore the arches **AC, BD**, on which those angles stand, are equal (26. 3). Therefore, parallel chords &c. **Q. E. D.** Ed.



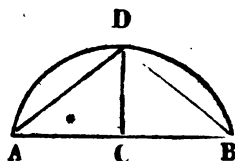
### PROPOSITION XXX. PROBLEM.

To bisect a given arch.

Let **ADB** be the given arch; it is required to bisect it.

Draw **AB**, and bisect it in **C**; from the point **C** draw **CD** perp. to **AB**, and join **AD, DB**; the arch **ADB** is bisected in the point **D**.

**AC** is equal to **CB**, and **CD** is common to the triangles **ACD, BCD**, and the right angles at **C** are equal; therefore the base **AD** is equal to **BD**; wherefore the arch **AD** is equal to the arch **DB** (28. 3); and each of the arches **AD, DB** is less than a semi-circle, because **DC** passes through the centre (Cor. 1. 3). Therefore the given arch **ADB** is bisected in **D**. Which was to be done.





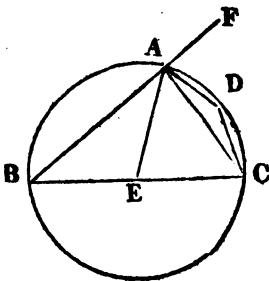
**COR.** Hence, if a straight line bisect a chord at right angles, it will also bisect the arch subtended by that chord. This is evident from the demonstration. ED.

**PROPOSITION XXXI. THEOREM.**

The angle at the circumference of a semicircle is a right angle; the angle in a segment greater than a semicircle is acute; and the angle in a segment less than a semicircle is obtuse.

Let ABCD be a circle, of which the diameter is BC, and the centre E; draw CA dividing the circle into the two segments ABC, ADC; draw BA, AD, DC; the angle in the semicircle BAC is a right angle; the angle in the segment ABC, which is greater than a semicircle, is acute; and the angle in the segment ADC, which is less than a semicircle, is obtuse.

Join AE, and produce BA to F. Because BE is equal to EA, the angle EAB is equal to FBA; and because AE is equal to EC, the angle EAC is equal to ECA; wherefore the whole angle BAC is equal to the two angles ABC, ACB. But FAC, the exterior angle of the triangle ABC, is also equal to the two angles ABC, ACB (32. 1); therefore the angle BAC is equal to FAC; therefore each of them is a right angle. Wherefore the angle BAC in a semicircle is a right angle.



Again, the angle BAC of the triangle ABC is a right angle, therefore ABC is less than a right angle (3 Cor 32. 1). Therefore the angle in a segment ABC, greater than a semicircle, is acute.

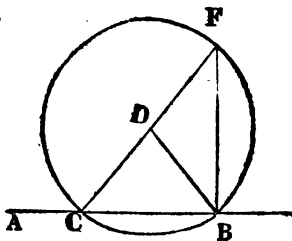
Lastly, because ABCD is a quadrilateral figure in a circle, the angles ABC, ADC are together equal to two right angles (22. 3). But ABC is an acute angle; wherefore ADC is an obtuse angle. Therefore the angle in a segment ADC, less than a semicircle, is obtuse. Therefore, the angle &c. Q. E. D.

**COR.** A straight line AE drawn from the right angle BAC of a right angled triangle ABC to the middle E of the hypotenuse BC is equal to half the hypotenuse. For since the angle BAC is in a semicircle AE is equal to BE. ED.

*Scholium.* From the remarkable property of a circle, that the angle in a semicircle is a right angle, are derived elegant methods of drawing tangents to circles, and perpendiculars from any points in or without a straight line.

1. To erect a perpendicular at any point B in a given straight line AB.

Without the line AB take any point D which is opposite to AB, and draw DB. From the centre D, with the radius DB, describe a circle cutting AB in the points C and B. Through the points C and D draw the line CDF meeting the circumference in F. Draw BF, which will be the perpendicular required.



For the angle CBF is in a semicircle, and therefore is a right angle; therefore BF is perp. to AB.

2. To let fall a perpendicular on a given straight line AB from a given point F without it.

From F draw any inclining line FC to meet AB in any point C; bisect FC in D, and from the point D, with the radius DC, describe a circle cutting AB in C and B. Draw FB, which is the perpendicular required.

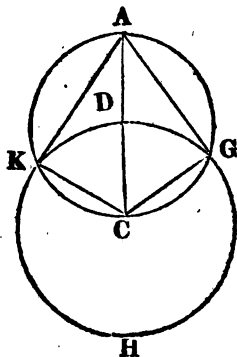
For the angle CBF is in a semicircle, and therefore is a right angle; therefore FB is perp. to AB.

3. To draw a tangent to a circle from a given point without it.

Let DGH be the given circle, and A any point without it, from which it is required to draw a tangent.

Find the centre C, and join AC, and on AC as a diameter describe the circle AGCK cutting the circumference of the given circle in the points G and K. Draw AG, AK, then AG or AK is the tangent required.

Draw CG and CK, then the angles CGA, CKA in semicircles are right angles, therefore AG, AK are perp. to the radii CG, CK, and therefore touch the circle DGH in the points G and K (Cor. 16. 3).



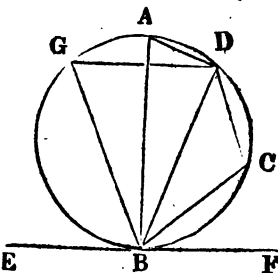
Cor. Hence two tangents AG, AK, drawn from the same point A without a circle, are equal. For the triangles AGC, AKC, having the side CG equal to CK, and CA common, and the angles at G and K right, are equal in all respects (3 Cor. B. 2), therefore AG is equal to AK.

PROPOSITION XXXII. THEOREM.

If a straight line touch a circle, and a chord be drawn from the point of contact, the angle made by the tangent and chord is equal to the angle in the segment of the circle, which is on the opposite side of the chord.

Let the line EF touch the circle ABCD in the point B, and from B let the chord BD be drawn; the angle FBD which BD makes with BF is equal to the angle which is the opposite segment DAGB, and the angle DBE, which BD makes with BE, is equal to the angle in the opposite segment BCD.

From the point B draw BA perp. to EF; take any point C in the arch BD, and draw AD, DC, CB. Because EF touches the circle ABCD in B, and BA is drawn perp. to EF form the point of contact B, the centre of the circle is in BA (19. 3), and BA is a diameter; therefore ADB is a right angle (31. 3), and therefore the other two angles BAD, ABD are together equal to a right angle (4 Cor. 32. 1). But ABF is a right angle; therefore ABF is equal to the two angles BAD, ABD. Take from these equals the common angle ABD, and there will remain the angle DBF equal to the angle BAD E which is in the opposite segment of the circle, and is equal to any other angle BGD in the same segment (21. 3).

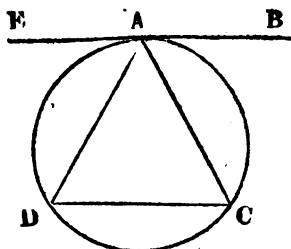


Again, the three angles EBD, DBC, CBF, are together equal to two right angles (1 Cor. 13. 1), and the three angles of the triangle BDC are together equal to two right angles (32. 1); therefore  $EBD + DBC + CBF = BDC + DBC + BCD$ . But in these two equals the angle DBC is common, and the angle CBF is equal to BDC, by the former case; therefore the angle EBD is equal to the angle BCD, which is in the opposite segment of the circle, and is equal to any angle in that segment. Wherefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D. Ed.

Cor. If a straight line  $FB$  meet the circumference of a circle in any point  $B$ , and make an angle with a chord  $BD$  drawn from the same point  $B$ , equal to the angle at  $A$  in the alternate segment  $BGD$  of the circle, the line  $BF$  touches the circle in that point. Ed.

*This proposition may be thus demonstrated.* Ed.

Let the straight line  $EB$  touch the circle  $ACD$  in the point  $A$ , and from  $A$  let the chord  $AC$  be drawn. Through  $C$  draw  $CD$  parallel to  $EB$ , and join  $AD$ . Then the angle  $BAC$  is equal to  $ACD$  (29. 1); and because the arches  $AC$ ,  $AD$  are equal (A. 3), the angles  $ACD$ ,  $ADC$  are equal (27. 3). Therefore the angle  $BAC$  is equal to the angle  $ADC$  in the alternate segment  $ADC$ .

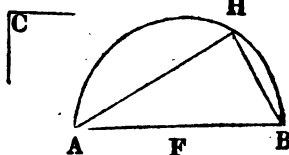


### PROPOSITION XXXIII. PROBLEM.

On a given straight line to describe a segment of a circle, which shall contain an angle equal to a given rectilineal angle; that is, to describe a segment such that all the angles described in it shall be equal to a given angle.

Let  $AB$  be the given straight line, and  $C$  the given rectilineal angle; it is required to describe on  $AB$  a segment of a circle containing an angle equal to  $C$ .

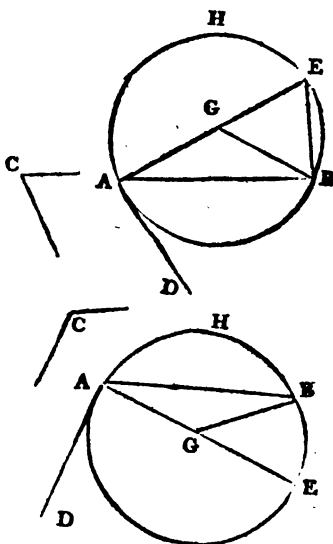
First, let  $C$  be a right angle; bisect  $AB$  in  $F$ , and from the centre  $F$ , at the distance  $FB$ , describe the semicircle  $AHB$ . The angle  $AHB$  in a semicircle is equal to the right angle  $C$  (31. 3).



If  $C$  be not a right angle, then at the point  $A$ , in the line  $AB$ , make the angle  $BAD$  equal to  $C$  (23. 1), and from  $A$  draw  $AE$  perp. to  $AD$ ; at the point  $B$ , the other extremity of  $AB$ , make the angle  $ABG$  equal to  $BAG$ ; then  $GA$  is equal to  $GB$  (6. 1). From the centre  $G$ , at the distance  $GA$ , describe a circle, and it

will pass through the point B; then AHB is the segment required.

Because AD is perp. to the extremity of the diameter AE, it touches the circle in the point A (Cor. 16. 3); and since AB is a chord drawn from the point of contact A, the angle BAD is equal to any angle in the segment on the other side of AB (32. 3). But the angle BAD is equal to C; therefore the angle C is equal to any angle in the segment AHB on the other side of AB. Wherefore, on the given line AB the segment AHB of a circle is described which contains an angle equal to the given angle C. Which was to be done.

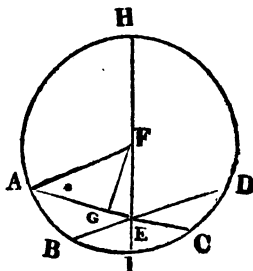


PROPOSITION XXXV. THEOREM.\*

If two chords of a circle cut each other, the rectangle contained by the segments of one chord is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of the other.

Let the two chords AC, BD, of the circle ABCD, cut each other in the point E; the rectangle  $AE \cdot EC = BE \cdot ED$ .

Let the chord HI which passes through the centre of the circle, cut the chord AC, which does not pass through the centre, in E; bisect HI in F, then F is the centre of the circle. Join AF, and from F draw FG perp. to AC; then AG is equal to GC (3. 3). In the triangle AEF the sum of the sides AF, FE is HE, and their difference is EI; also, the sum of the segments of the base AG, GE, made by the perp. FG, is AE, and their difference is  $AG - GE = GC - GE = EC$ .



\* Shorter and plainer demonstrations of this and the next proposition may be seen at the end of Book VI.

But  $(AF + FE) \cdot (AF - FE) = (AG + GE) \cdot (AG - GE)$  (F. 2), that is,  $HE \cdot EI = AE \cdot EC$ .

Again, if any chord HI, which passes through the centre, cut any other chord BD, which does not pass through the centre, it may be proved in the same manner that  $BE \cdot ED = HE \cdot EI$ . And it has been proved that  $AE \cdot EC = HE \cdot EI$ . Consequently  $AE \cdot EC = BE \cdot ED$ . Therefore, if two chords &c. Q. E. D. Ed.

**COR. 1.** If two chords of a circle cut each other, their segments are reciprocally proportional. For  $AE \cdot EC = BE \cdot ED$ ,  $\therefore AE : ED :: BE : EC$ .

**COR. 2.** If from any point C (figure, Prop. C), in the circumference of a circle a perpendicular CE be drawn to a diameter AB, the rectangle contained by the segments of the diameter is equal to the square of the perpendicular. Produce CE to the circumference at D, then  $CE = ED$  (3. 3), and  $AE \cdot EB = CE \cdot ED$  or  $CE^2$ .

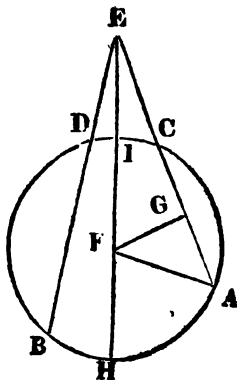
### PROPOSITION B. THEOREM.

*This is Cor. 36. 3.*

If from any point without a circle two secants be drawn, the rectangle contained by one secant and its external part is equal to the rectangle contained by the other secant and its external part.

Let E be any point without the circle ACDB, from which two secants EA, EB are drawn; the rectangle  $AE \cdot EC = BE \cdot ED$ .

Through the point E and the centre F draw the secant EFH; join AF, and from F draw FG perp. to AC; then  $AG = GC$  (3. 3). In the triangle AEF the sum of the sides AF, FE is HE, and their difference is IE; also the sum of the segments of the base AG, GE, made by the perp. FG, is AE, and their difference is CE. But  $(FE + FA) \cdot (FE - FA) = (GE + GA) \cdot (GE - GA)$  (F. 2), that is,  $HE \cdot EI = AE \cdot EC$ . In the same manner it may be proved that  $HE \cdot EI = BE \cdot ED$ . Consequently  $AE \cdot EC = BE \cdot ED$ . Therefore, if from any &c. Q. E. D. Ed.



**COR.** If from any point without a circle two secants be drawn, they are to each other reciprocally as their external segments. For  $AE \cdot EC = BE \cdot ED$ ,  $\therefore AE : BE :: ED : EC$ .

*Scholium.* The last two propositions may be enunciated together as follows.

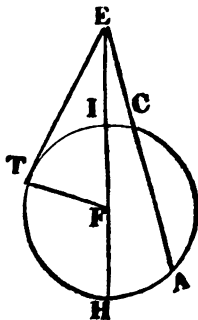
If two chords intersect each other in a circle, or, being produced, without it, the rectangle of the segments of one chord, intercepted between the point of concurrence and the circumference, is equal to the rectangle of the similar segments of the other.

**PROPOSITION XXXVI. THEOREM.**

If from any point without a circle a tangent and a secant be drawn, the rectangle contained by the secant and its external part is equal to the square of the tangent.

Let  $E$  be any point without a circle  $ACTH$ , from which a tangent  $ET$  and a secant  $EA$  are drawn;  $AE \cdot EC = ET^2$ .

Let  $EH$  pass through the centre  $F$ , and join  $FT$ ; then  $\angle FTE$  is a right angle (18.3), therefore  $FE^2 - FT^2 = TE^2$  (1 Cor. B. 2). But  $FE^2 - FT^2 = (FE + FT) \cdot (FE - FT)$  (5.2), or  $HE \cdot ET = ET^2$ . But  $HE \cdot EI$  is equal to the rectangle  $AE \cdot EC$  under any other secant and its external part (B. 3). Therefore  $AE \cdot EC = ET^2$ . Therefore, if from any &c. Q. E. D.



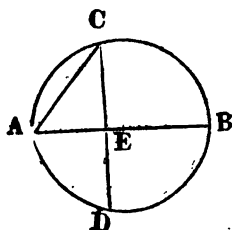
## PROPOSITION C. THEOREM.

ED.

If from any point in the circumference of a circle a perpendicular be drawn to a diameter, and a chord to either end of it, the square of the chord is equal to the rectangle under the diameter and the part of it between the perpendicular and the chord.

From any point C in the circumference of the circle ACBD let a perp. CE and a chord CA be drawn to the diameter AB;  $AC^2 = AB \cdot AE$ .

For  $AC^2 = CE^2 + AE^2$  (B. 2), and  $AB \cdot AE = AE^2 + AE \cdot EB$  (3. 2). But  $CE^2 = AE \cdot EB$  (2 Cor. 35. 3); therefore  $AB \cdot AE = AE^2 + CE^2$ , or  $AC^2$ . Therefore, if from any point &c. Q. E. D.



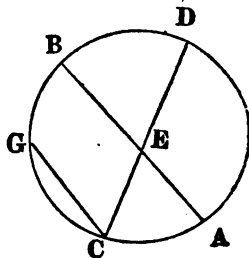
## PROPOSITION D. THEOREM.

ED.

If two chords of a circle intersect each other, the angle which they contain is equal to half the angle at the centre which stands on the sum or the difference of the arches intercepted between them, according as they meet within or without the circle.

1. Let ACBD be a circle, and AB, CD two chords which intersect each other in the point E within the circle; the angle DEB is equal to half the angle at the centre which stands on an arch equal to the sum of the arches AC, DB.

Through C draw CG parallel to AB, then the arch BG = AC (A. 3), and therefore the arch DBG = AC + DB. Now the angle DEB = angle DCG (29. 1), which is equal to half the angle at the centre standing on the same arch DBG (20. 3); therefore the angle DEB is equal to half the angle at the centre standing on the arch DBG.

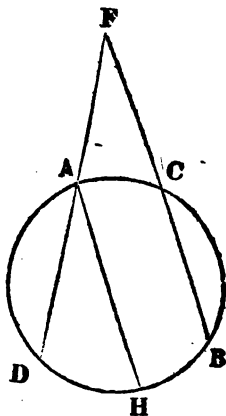




2. Again, let the two chords  $DA$ ,  $BC$  be produced and meet in  $F$ ; the angle  $DFB$  is equal to half the angle at the centre standing on an arch equal to the difference of the arches  $DB$ ,  $AC$ .

Draw  $AH$  parallel to  $BC$ , then the arch  $HB = AC$ , and the arch  $DH = DB - AC$ .

Now the angle  $DFB =$  angle  $DAH$ , which is equal to half the angle at the centre standing on the arch  $DH$ ; therefore the angle  $DFB$  is equal to half the angle at the centre standing on the arch  $DH$ . Therefore, if two chords &c. **Q. E. D.**



Cor. If two chords intersect each other at right angles within a circle, the sum of the opposite arches which they intercept is equal to half the circumference.

### PROPOSITION E. THEOREM.

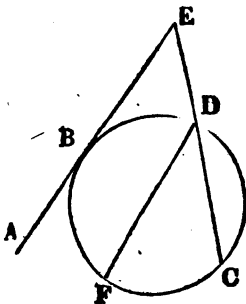
Es.

If from any point without a circle a tangent and a secant be drawn, the angle which they contain is equal to an angle at the circumference of the circle standing on an arch equal to the difference between the arches intercepted by the tangent and secant.

From any point  $E$  without the circle  $BDC$  let a tangent  $EBA$  and a secant  $EDC$  be drawn; the angle  $AEC$  is equal to an angle at the circumference on an arch equal to the difference of the arches  $BC$ ,  $BD$ .

From the point  $D$  draw  $DF$  parallel to  $AE$ , then the arch  $FB$  is equal to  $BD$  (A. 3), therefore the arch  $FC$  is equal to the difference of the arches  $BC$  and  $BD$ .

Again, because  $FD$  is parallel to  $AE$ , the angle  $FDC$  is equal to  $AEC$  (29. 1). But  $FDC$  is an angle at the circumference standing on the arch  $FC$ , which is equal to the difference of the arches  $BC$ ,  $BD$ . Therefore, if from &c. **Q. E. D.**



P

### THE PRINCIPAL THEOREMS IN BOOK III.

---

If in a circle a straight line bisect a chord at right angles, it will pass through the centre of the circle.

If in a circle a diameter bisect a chord, it will be perpendicular to the chord; and if it be perpendicular to a chord, it will bisect the chord, and also the arch subtended by the chord.

Chords in a circle, which are equal to one another, are equally distant from the centre; and chords which are equally distant from the centre of a circle are equal to one another.

A straight line perpendicular to the extremity of a radius or a diameter is a tangent to the circle.

If a straight line touch a circle, a radius drawn to the point of contact is perpendicular to the tangent.

An angle at the centre of a circle is double of an angle at the circumference, standing on the same arch.

All angles in the same segment of a circle, or standing on the same arch, are equal to one another.

The two opposite angles of any quadrilateral figure described in a circle are together equal to two right angles.

In equal circles equal angles stand on equal arches, whether they be at the centres or at the circumferences of the circles.

In equal circles the angles which stand on equal arches are equal to one another, whether they be at the centres or at the circumferences of the circles.

In equal circles equal chords subtend equal arches on the same sides of them, and equal arches are subtended by equal chords.

An angle in a semicircle is a right angle.

If a straight line touch a circle, and a chord be drawn from the point of contact, the angle made by the tangent and chord is equal to the angle in the segment of the circle which is on the other side of the chord.

If two chords in a circle cut each other, the rectangle contained by the segments of one chord is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of the other.

If from any point without a circle two secants be drawn, the rectangle contained by one of them and its external part is equal to the rectangle contained by the other and its external part.

If from any point without a circle a tangent and a secant be drawn, the rectangle contained by the secant and its external part is equal to the square of the tangent.

If from any point in the circumference of a circle a perpendicular be drawn to a diameter, and a chord to either end of it, the square of the perpendicular is equal to the rectangle under the segments of the diameter; and the square of the chord is equal to the rectangle of the diameter and its segment adjacent to the chord.

If two chords of a circle intersect each other, the angle which they contain is equal to half the angle at the centre which stands on the sum or the difference of the arches intercepted between them, according as they meet within or without the circle.

END OF BOOK III.



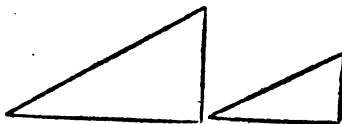
# ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY.

## BOOK VI.

---

### DEFINITIONS.

1. Similar rectilineal figures are those which have their several angles equal, each to each, and the sides about the equal angles proportional.



- A. In similar figures the sides which are opposite to equal angles are homologous or like sides. ED.

2. Two sides of one figure are said to be reciprocally proportional to two sides of another, when one of the sides of the first figure is to one of the sides of the other, as the remaining side of the other is to the remaining side of the first.

- B. Two magnitudes, and other two, are said to be reciprocally proportional, when one magnitude of the former is to one of the latter, as the remaining magnitude of the latter is to the remaining magnitude of the former. ED.

- C. A straight line is said to be harmonically divided, when it is divided into three segments, so that the whole line is to one of the extreme segments as the other extreme segment is to the middle segment. ED.

- D. Two straight lines are said to be similarly divided, when any two corresponding segments of them have the same ratio as the lines have. ED.

3. A straight line is said to be cut in extreme and mean ratio, when the whole line is to the greater segment as the greater segment is to the less.

4. The altitude of any figure is the straight line drawn from its vertex perpendicular to the base.

## PROPOSITION I. THEOREM.

Triangles of the same altitude are to one another as their bases; and parallelograms of the same altitude are to one another as their bases.\*—*See Note.*

Let  $P$  and  $p$  denote two parallelograms,  $A$  and  $a$  their altitudes,  $B$  and  $b$  their bases; then, by Preliminary Observations to Book II, the surface of  $P = A \cdot B$ , and the surface of  $p = a \cdot b$ . Consequently  $P : p :: A \cdot B : a \cdot b$ ; that is, parallelograms are to one another as their bases and altitudes jointly.

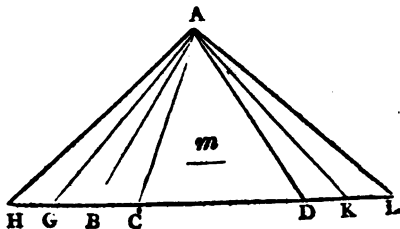
Because a paral. is double of a triangle of the same base and altitude (41. 1), triangles are to one another as their bases and altitudes jointly.

If the altitudes of the parallelograms or triangles be equal, the proportion becomes  $P : p :: B : b$ , that is, parallelograms or triangles of the same altitude are to one another as their bases, which is the proposition.

COR. If the bases be equal, then  $P : p :: A : a$ , that is, parallelograms or triangles on equal bases are to one another as their altitudes.

*Otherwise.* Let the triangles  $ACH$  and  $ADL$  have the same altitude; the triangle  $ACH : ADL :: HC : DL$ .

Let the bases  $HC$  and  $DL$  be commensurable, or be divisible by the same quantity, and let the line  $m$  be their common measure or divisor. Divide the base  $HC$  into the parts  $CB, BG, GH$ , each equal to  $m$ ; and divide the base  $DL$  into the parts  $DK, KL$ , each equal to  $m$ . From the vertex  $A$  draw straight lines to the several points of division.



The triangles  $ABC, AGB, AHG, ADK, AKL$ , are equal to one another (38. 1). The triangle  $ACH$  contains  $ABC$  as often as the base  $HC$  contains  $m$ , and the triangle  $ADL$  contains  $ADK$ , or its equal  $ABC$ , as often as the base  $DL$  contains  $m$ . Therefore the triangle  $ACH : ABC :: \text{base } HC : m$  (Propor. 19), and the triangle  $ADL : ABC :: \text{base } DL : m$ . These

\* Euclid's demonstration of this proposition is difficult to students, and therefore has been changed for another which is simpler and more intelligible.

two proportions become by alternation (Propor. 36), the triangle  $ACH$  : base  $HC$  ::  $ABC$  :  $m$ , and the triangle  $ADL$  : base  $DL$  ::  $ABC$  :  $m$ . Hence  $ACH$  :  $HC$  ::  $ADL$  :  $DL$  (Propor. 34), or the triangle  $ACH$  :  $ADL$  :: base  $HC$  :  $DL$ .

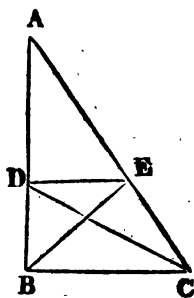
Again, because a paral. is double of a triangle of the same base and altitude (41. 1),  $2ACH$  :  $2ADL$  ::  $HC$  :  $DL$  (Propor. 30). Therefore, triangles &c. Q. E. D. Ep.

## PROPOSITION II. THEOREM.

If a straight line be drawn parallel to one of the sides of a triangle it will cut the other sides proportionally.

Let  $DE$  be drawn parallel to  $BC$ , one of the sides of the triangle  $ABC$ ;  $BD$  is to  $DA$  as  $CE$  to  $EA$ .

Join  $BE$ ,  $CD$ ; then the triangle  $BDE$  is equal to the triangle  $CDE$  (37. 1). But  $ADE$  is another triangle; therefore the triangle  $BDE$  : triangle  $ADE$  :: triangle  $CDE$  : triangle  $ADE$ . But the triangle  $BDE$  : triangle  $ADE$  ::  $BD$  :  $DA$  (1. 6), and the triangle  $CDE$  : triangle  $ADE$  ::  $CE$  :  $EA$ . Therefore  $BD$  :  $DA$  ::  $CE$  :  $EA$  (Propor. 34). Therefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D.



Cor.  $BD + DA$  :  $DA$  ::  $CE + EA$  :  $EA$ , or  $AB$  :  $AD$  ::  $AC$  :  $AE$  (Propor. 37). Also,  $AB$  :  $BD$  ::  $AC$  :  $CE$ .

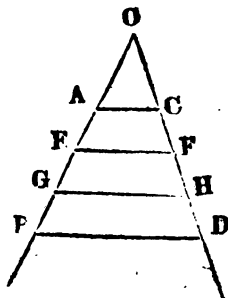
## PROPOSITION A. THEOREM.

LEGENDE.

If between two straight lines any number of parallel straight lines be drawn, those two lines will be cut proportionally.

Let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be two straight lines, and let any number of parallels  $AC$ ,  $EF$ ,  $GH$ ,  $BD$ , &c. be drawn between them;  $AE$  :  $CF$  ::  $EG$  :  $FH$  ::  $GB$  :  $HD$ .

Produce the lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  to meet in  $O$ . In the triangle  $OEF$ , where  $AC$  is parallel to the base  $EF$ ,  $OE : AE :: OF : CF$  (Cor. 2. 6),  $\therefore OE : OF :: AE : CF$  (Propor. 36). In the triangle  $OGH$  we have  $OE : EG :: OF : FH$ ,  $\therefore OE : OF :: EG : FH$ . Consequently  $AE : CF :: EG : FH$  (Propor. 34). In the same manner  $EG : FH :: GB : HD$ ; and so on, as far as we please. Therefore the two lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  are cut proportionally by the parallels  $EF$ ,  $GH$ , &c. Q. E. D.



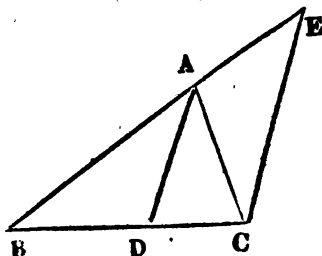
### PROPOSITION III. THEOREM.

If an angle of a triangle be bisected by a straight line which cuts the base or opposite side, the segments of the base will have the same ratio which the adjacent sides of the triangle have to each other; and if the segments of the base have the same ratio which the adjacent sides of the triangle have to each other, the straight line drawn from the vertex to the point of section bisects the vertical angle.

Let the angle  $BAC$ , of any triangle  $ABC$ , be bisected by the straight line  $AD$ ;  $BD$  is to  $DC$  as  $BA$  to  $AC$ .

Through the point  $C$  draw  $CE$  parallel to  $DA$ , and let  $BA$  produced meet  $CE$  in  $E$ . Because the line  $AC$  meets the parallels  $AD$ ,  $EC$ , the angle  $ACE$  is equal to the alternate angle  $CAD$  (29. 1). But  $CAD$ , by hypothesis, is equal to the angle  $BAD$ ; wherefore  $BAD$  is equal to the angle  $ACE$ .

Again, because the line  $BAE$  meets the parallels  $AD$ ,  $EC$ , the exterior angle  $BAD$  is equal to the interior angle  $AEC$ . But the angle  $ACE$  has been proved equal to  $BAD$ ; therefore also  $ACE$  is equal to the angle  $AEC$ ; consequently the side  $AE$  is equal to  $AC$ . Because  $AD$  is drawn parallel to  $EC$ , one of the sides of the triangle  $BCE$ ,  $BD$  is to  $DC$  as  $BA$  to  $AE$  (2. 6) or  $AC$ .





Next, let  $BD$  be to  $DC$  as  $BA$  to  $AC$ , and join  $AD$ ; the angle  $BAC$  is bisected by the straight line  $AD$ .

The same construction being made, as  $BD$  to  $DC$  so is  $BA$  to  $AC$ ; and as  $BD$  to  $DC$  so is  $BA$  to  $AE$  (2. 6), because  $AD$  is parallel to  $EC$ ; therefore  $AB$  is to  $AC$  as  $AB$  to  $AE$  (Propor. 34); consequently  $AC$  is equal to  $AE$  (Propor. 32), therefore the angle  $AEC$  is equal to the angle  $ACE$ . But the angle  $AEC$  is equal to the exterior and opposite angle  $BAD$ , and the angle  $ACE$  is equal to the alternate angle  $CAD$  (29. 1); wherefore also the angle  $BAD$  is equal to the angle  $CAD$ ; therefore, the angle  $BAC$  is divided into two equal angles by the straight line  $AD$ . Therefore, if the angle &c. Q. E. D.

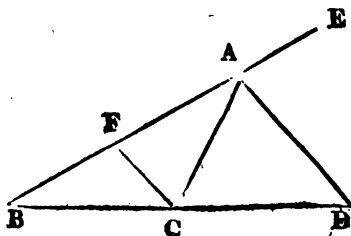
**COR.** If any angle of a triangle be bisected by a straight line which meets the opposite side, the sum of the two sides containing that angle is to either of them, as the base is to the segment adjacent to that side. For, since  $BA : AC :: BD : DC$ ,  $BA + AC : BA :: BD + DC$  or  $BC : BD$  (Propor. 37). **ED.**

### PROPOSITION B. THEOREM.

If one side of a triangle be produced, and the exterior angle be bisected by a straight line which cuts the base produced, the segments between the bisecting line and the extremities of the base have the same ratio which the adjacent sides of the triangle have to each other; and if the segments of the base produced have the same ratio which the adjacent sides of the triangle have, the straight line drawn from the vertex to the point of section bisects the exterior angle of the triangle.

Let the exterior angle  $EAC$ , of any triangle  $ABC$ , be bisected by the straight line  $AD$ , which meets the base produced in  $D$ ;  $BD$  is to  $DC$  as  $BA$  to  $AC$ .

Through  $C$  draw  $CF$  parallel to  $AD$ . The proof is literally the same as that of the last proposition, and need not be repeated.



Q

## PROPOSITION IV. THEOREM.

The sides about the equal angles of equiangular triangles are proportional; and the sides which are opposite to the equal angles are homologous sides, that is, they are the antecedents or the consequents of the ratios.

Let  $ABC$ ,  $DCE$  be equiangular triangles, having the angle  $ABC$  equal to the angle  $DCE$ , and the angle  $ACB$  to the angle  $DEC$ , and consequently the angle  $BAC$  equal to the angle  $CDE$  (2 Cor. 32. 1). The sides about the equal angles of the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $DCE$  are proportional; and those are the homologous sides which are opposite to the equal angles. "Thus, the angle at  $A$  being equal to the angle at  $D$ , the sides about the former are proportional to the sides about the latter, namely,  $AB : AC :: DC : DE$ ; also the two antecedents  $AB$ ,  $DC$  are opposite to the equal angles at  $C$ ,  $E$ ; and the two consequents  $AC$ ,  $DE$  are opposite to the equal angles at  $B$ ,  $C$ ."

Let the triangle  $DCE$  be placed so that its side  $CE$  may be contiguous to  $BC$ , and in the same straight line with it. Because the angles  $ABC$ ,  $ACB$  are together less than two right angles, the angles  $ABC$ ,  $DEC$  are also less than two right angles; wherefore  $BA$ ,  $ED$  produced will meet. Let them be produced, and meet in the point  $F$ . Because the angle  $ABC$  is equal to  $DCE$ ,  $BF$  is parallel to  $CD$  (28. 1); and because the angle  $ACB$  is equal to  $DEC$ ,  $AC$  is parallel to  $FE$ . Therefore  $FACD$  is a parallelogram; consequently  $AF$  is equal to  $CD$  (34. 1), and  $AC$  to  $FD$ .

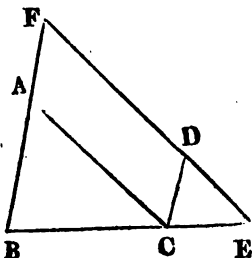
Because  $AC$  is parallel to  $FE$ , one of the sides of the triangle  $FBE$ ,  $BA : AF :: BC : CE$  (2. 6), or, because  $AF$  is equal to  $CD$ ,  $BA : CD :: BC : CE$ ; therefore, alternately,  $BA : BC :: DC : CE$  (Propor. 36). Again, because  $CD$  is parallel to  $BF$ ,  $BC : CE :: FD : DE$ , or, because  $FD$  is equal to  $AC$ ,  $BC : CE :: AC : DE$ ;

therefore  $BC : CA :: CE : ED$ .

But  $BA : BC :: DC : CE$ ;

therefore  $BA : AC :: CD : DE$  (Propor. 42, 43). Therefore, the sides &c. Q. E. D.

COR. It follows from this prop. that equiangular triangles are of necessity *similar* figures, according to Def. 1; therefore



similar triangles are often used to denote equiangular triangles.

LUDLAM.

PROPOSITION C. THEOREM.

LUDLAM.

If a straight line be drawn from the vertex of any triangle to the base, it will cut every line which is parallel to the base in the same ratio as the segments of the base.

Let ABC be a triangle, BC the base, EF a line parallel to the base, ADM a line drawn from the vertex A, cutting EF in D, and the base in M; the segments of EF have the same ratio to each other as the segments of the base BC;  $DE : DF :: MB : MC$ .

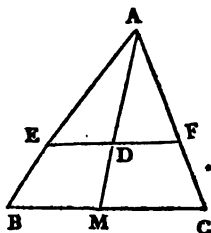
In the triangles AED, ABM the angles AED, ABM are equal (29. 1), and the angle EAD is common, therefore the remaining angles ADE, AMB are equal (2 Cor. 32. 1); therefore the triangles AED, ABM are equiangular. In the same manner the triangles ADF, AMC are equiangular. Hence

$$AD : AM :: DE : MB \text{ (4. 6),}$$

$$\text{and } AD : AM :: DF : MC,$$

therefore  $DE : MB :: DF : MC$  (Propor. 34);

therefore  $DE : DF :: MB : MC$  (Propor. 36).



COR. 1. If a straight line drawn from the vertex of a triangle to the base bisect the base, it will bisect every line parallel to the base, and terminating in the two sides of the triangle.

COR. 2. Parallel lines BC, EF are cut proportionally by diverging lines AB, AM and AC, AM. For  $MB : MC :: DE : DF$ .

COR. 3. Diverging lines are proportional to the corresponding segments into which they divide parallel lines;  $AB : AE :: BM : ED$  (4. 6)  $:: MC : DF$ .

PROPOSITION D. THEOREM.

ED.

If a straight line be drawn parallel to the base of a triangle, and another straight line be drawn from the vertex to meet the two parallels, the segments of that line intercepted between the vertex and the parallels will be to each other as the two parallels.—See last fig.

Let a straight line  $EF$  be drawn parallel to the base  $BC$  of a triangle  $ABC$ , and from the vertex  $A$  let  $AM$  be drawn to meet the parallels  $BC$ ,  $EF$ ;  $AM : AD :: BC : EF$ .

For the triangles  $AEF$ ,  $ABC$  are equiangular, and also the triangles  $AED$ ,  $ABM$ ;

therefore  $AE : EF :: AB : BC$  (4. 6),

and  $AD : AE :: AM : AB$ ;

therefore  $AD : EF :: AM : BC$  (Propor. 42, 43),

$\therefore AD : AM :: EF : BC$  (Propor. 36).

### PROPOSITION V. THEOREM.

If the sides of two triangles, about each of their angles, be proportional, the triangles will be equiangular, and will have their equal angles opposite to the homologous sides.

Let the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  have their sides proportional, so that  $AB : BC :: DE : EF$ ,  
and  $BC : CA :: EF : FD$ ,  
and  $BA : AC :: ED : DF$ ;

the triangle  $ABC$  is equiangular to the triangle  $DEF$ , and their equal angles are opposite to the homologous sides, namely, the angle  $ABC$  being equal to the angle  $DEF$ , and the angle  $BCA$  to  $EFD$ , and also the angle  $BAC$  to  $EDF$ .

At the points  $E$ ,  $F$ , in the line  $EF$ , make the angle  $FEG$  equal to the angle  $ABC$ , and the angle  $EFG$  equal to  $BCA$ ; wherefore the angle  $BAC$  is equal to  $EGF$  (2 Cor. 32. 1); therefore the triangle  $ABC$  is equiangular to the triangle  $GEF$ ; consequently they have their sides opposite to the equal angles proportional (4. 6). Wherefore

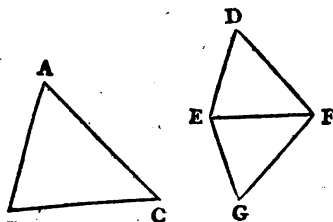
$AB : BC :: GE : EF$ . But, by supposition,

$AB : BC :: DE : EF$ ; therefore

$DE : EF :: GE : EF$  (Propor. 34).

Therefore  $DE$  and  $GE$  are equal (Propor. 32). For the same reason  $DF$  is equal to  $FG$ ,

In the triangles  $DEF$ ,  $GEF$ ,  $DE$  is equal to  $EG$ , and  $EF$  common, and  $DF$  equal to  $GF$ ; therefore the angle  $DEF$  is equal to  $GEF$ ; wherefore the angle  $DFE$  is equal to  $GFE$ , and the angle  $EDF$  to  $EGF$ . Now the angle  $DEF$  is equal to  $GEF$ ,



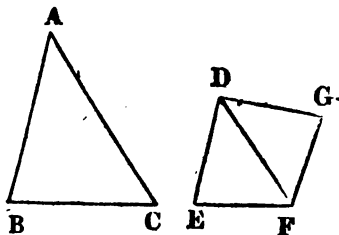
and  $\angle GEF$  to the angle  $ABC$ ; therefore the angle  $ABC$  is equal to  $\angle DEF$ . For the same reason the angle  $ACB$  is equal to  $\angle DFE$ , and the angle  $A$  to the angle  $D$ . Therefore the triangle  $ABC$  is equiangular to the triangle  $DEF$ . 'And they have their equal angles opposite to the homologous sides, namely, the equal angles  $ACB$  and  $DFE$  opposite to the homologous sides  $AB$  and  $DE$ , and the equal angles  $A$  and  $D$  opposite to the homologous sides  $BC$  and  $EF$ , and the equal angles  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  opposite to the homologous sides  $AC$  and  $DF$ .' Wherefore, if the sides &c. Q. E. D.

PROPOSITION VI. THEOREM.

If two triangles have one angle of one triangle equal to one angle of the other, and the sides about the equal angles proportional, the triangles will be equiangular, and will have those angles equal which are opposite to the homologous sides.

Let the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  have the angle  $BAC$  in one triangle equal to the angle  $EDF$  in the other, and the sides about those angles proportional, that is,  $BA$  to  $AC$  as  $ED$  to  $DF$ ; the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  are equiangular, and have those angles equal which are opposite to the homologous sides, namely, the angle  $ABC$  equal to the angle  $DEF$ , and the angle  $ACB$  equal to  $\angle DFE$ .

At the points  $D$ ,  $F$ , in the line  $DF$ , make the angle  $FDG$  equal to either of the angles  $BAC$ ,  $EDF$ , and the angle  $DFG$  equal to  $\angle ACB$ ; wherefore the remaining angle  $B$  is equal to  $G$  (2 Cor. 32. 1); consequently the triangle  $ABC$  is equiangular to the triangle  $DGF$ ;



therefore  $BA : AC :: GD : DF$  (4. 6). But, by hypothesis,  $BA : AC :: ED : DF$ ; therefore  $ED : DF :: GD : DF$  (Propor. 34); wherefore  $ED$  is equal to  $DG$  (Propor. 32).

The triangles  $EDF$ ,  $DGF$  have the two sides  $ED$ ,  $DF$  equal to the two sides  $GD$ ,  $DF$ , and also the angle  $EDF$  equal to  $\angle GDF$ ; wherefore the base  $EF$  is equal to  $FG$ , and the angle

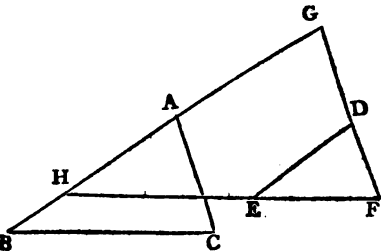
DFG is equal to DFE, and the angle G to the angle E. But the angle DFG is equal to ACB; therefore the angle ACB is equal to DFE; also the angle BAC is equal to EDF; wherefore the remaining angle B is equal to E. Therefore the triangle ABC is equiangular to the triangle DEF. 'And they have the angles ABC, DEF equal, which are opposite to the homologous sides AC, DF, and the angles ACB, DFE equal, which are opposite to the homologous sides AB, DE.' Wherefore, if two triangles &c. Q. E. D.\*

PROPOSITION E. THEOREM. LEGENBRE.

If the homologous sides of two triangles be parallel to each other, or perpendicular each to each; the triangles are similar.

1. Let ABC, DEF be two triangles which have the sides AB, BC, AC, parallel to the sides DE, EF, DF, each to each; the triangles ABC and DEF are similar.

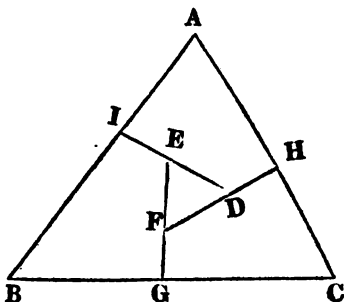
Because AB is parallel to DE, and BC to EF, the angle ABC is equal to DEF (D. 1); and because AC is parallel to DF, the angle ACB is equal to DFE; consequently the angle BAC is equal to EDF. Hence the triangles ABC, DEF are equiangular.



\* See a more simple demonstration in Hutton's Mathematics, Geometry, Theor. 86; or West's Mathematics, Prop. V. B. V. Ed.

2. Let  $ABC, DEF$  be two triangles which have the sides  $DE, DF, EF$ , perpendicular to the sides  $AB, AC, BC$ , each to each; the triangles  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  are similar.

In the quadrilateral figure  $AIDH$  the two angles at  $I$  and  $H$  are right, and the four angles are together equal to four right angles (6 Cor. 32. 1); therefore the two remaining angles  $IAH, IDH$  are together equal to two right angles. But the two angles  $EDF, IDH$  are together equal to two right angles (13. 1); therefore the angle  $EDF$  is equal to  $IAH$  or  $BAC$ .



If the side  $EF$  be perp. to  $BC$  it may be proved in the same manner that the angle  $DFE$  is equal to  $C$ , and the angle  $DEF$  to  $B$ . Hence the triangles  $ABC, DEF$ , whose sides are perp. each to each, are equiangular and similar.

Therefore, if the homologous sides &c. Q. E. D.

*Scholium.* In the case of parallel sides the homologous sides are the parallel sides; and in the case of perpendicular sides the homologous sides are the perpendicular sides. Thus, in case 2,  $DE$  is homologous to  $AB$ ,  $DF$  to  $AC$ , and  $EF$  to  $BC$ .

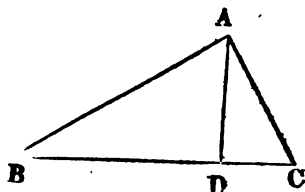
## PROPOSITION VIII. THEOREM.

In a right angled triangle, if a perpendicular be drawn from the right angle to the hypotenuse, the two triangles on each side of it are similar to the whole triangle and to each other.

Let  $ABC$  be a right angled triangle, having the right angle  $BAC$ , and from the point  $A$  let  $AD$  be drawn perp. to the hypotenuse  $BC$ ; the triangles  $ABD, ADC$  are similar to the whole triangle  $ABC$ , and to each other.

Because the angle  $BAC$  is equal to  $ADB$ , each of them being a right angle, and the angle  $B$  is common to the two triangles  $ABC, ABD$ , the remaining angle  $ACB$  is equal to  $BAD$  (2 Cor. 32. 1); therefore the triangle  $ABC$  is equiangular to

the triangle ABD; therefore the sides about the equal angles are proportional (4. 6); wherefore the triangles are similar (1 Def. 6). In like manner it may be proved that the triangle ADC is equiangular and similar to the triangle ABC.



Because the angles at D are right angles, and the angles ACD, DAB have been proved to be equal, the remaining angles ABD, DAC are equal; therefore the triangles ABD, ACD are mutually equiangular; consequently their homologous sides are proportional (4. 6); wherefore the triangles are similar. Therefore, in a right angled &c. Q. E. D.

COR. 1. The perpendicular drawn from the right angle of a right angled triangle to the hypotenuse or base, is a mean proportional between the segments of the base; and each of the sides is a mean proportional between the base and its segment adjacent to that side.

For, in the equiangular triangles

$$\triangle BDA, \triangle ADC, BD : DA :: DA : DC;$$

and in the triangles ABC, DBA,  $BC : BA :: BA : BD$ ;

and in the triangles ABC, ACD,  $BC : CA :: CA : CD$ .

COR. 2. Hence  $AB^2 = BC \cdot BD$  (Propor. 26),

and  $AC^2 = BC \cdot DC$ ; therefore,

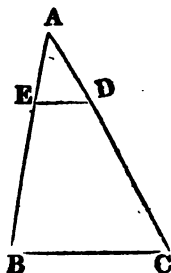
by adding,  $AB^2 + AC^2 = BC \cdot BD + BC \cdot DC$ , or  $BC \cdot BC$  (3. 2), or  $BC^2$ . This is Prop. B. 2. Ed.

### PROPOSITION IX. PROBLEM.

To divide a given straight line into two parts which shall be in any given ratio.

Let AB be the given straight line; it is required to divide AB into two parts which shall be in a given ratio.

From the point A draw a line AC, making any angle with AB; in AC take any point D, and let  $AD : DC$  be the given ratio. Join BC, and draw DE parallel to BC; then AB is divided in E in the ratio of AD to DC.



Because ED is parallel to BC, one of the sides of the triangle ABC,  $CD : DA :: BE : EA$  (2. 6), or  $AD : DC :: AE : EB$  (Propor. 35). Therefore the given line AB is divided into two parts which are in a given ratio. Which was to be done.



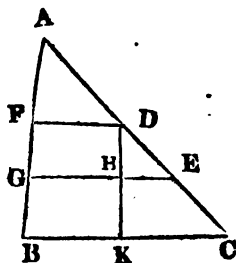
PROPOSITION X. PROBLEM.

To divide a given straight line similarly to a given divided straight line, that is, into parts which shall have the same ratios to one another which the parts of the divided given line have to one another.

Let  $AB$  be the straight line given to be divided, and  $AC$  the divided line; it is required to divide  $AB$  similarly to  $AC$ .

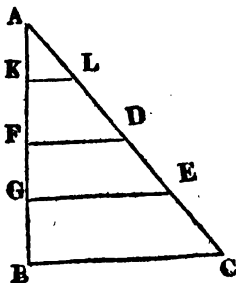
Let  $AC$  be divided in the points  $D, E$ ; and let  $AB, AC$  be placed so as to contain any angle; join  $BC$ , and through the points  $D, E$  draw  $DF, EG$  parallel to  $BC$ , and through  $D$  draw  $DHK$  parallel to  $AB$ ; then each of the figures  $FH, HB$  is a paral.; wherefore  $DH$  is equal to  $FG$  (34. 1), and  $HK$  to  $GB$ .

Because  $HF$  is parallel to  $KC$ , one of the sides of the triangle  $DKC$ ,  $CE : ED :: KH : HD$  (2. 6). But  $KH = BG$ , and  $HD = GF$ ; therefore  $CE : ED :: BG : GF$ . Again, because  $FD$  is parallel to  $EG$ , one of the sides of the triangle  $AGE$ ,  $ED : DA :: GF : FA$ . Therefore the given line  $AB$  is divided similarly to  $AC$ . Which was to be done.



COR. Hence a given straight line may be divided into any proposed number of equal parts.

Let  $AB$  and  $AC$  make any angle at the point  $A$ , and in  $AC$  take any number of equal parts  $CE, ED, DL, LA$ . Join  $BC$ , and through the points  $E, D, L$ , draw the straight lines  $EG, DF, LK$ , parallel to  $BC$ . Then  $AB$  will be divided into the same number of equal parts as  $AC$ , for the parts in  $AB$  are proportional to those in  $AC$ .



PROPOSITION XI. PROBLEM.

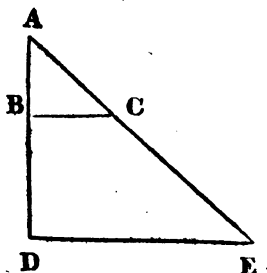
To find a third proportional to two given straight lines.

R

Let  $AB$ ,  $AC$  be the two given straight lines, and let them be placed so as to contain any angle; it is required to find a third proportional to  $AB$ ,  $AC$ .

Produce  $AB$ ,  $AC$  to the points  $D$ ,  $E$ ; make  $BD$  equal to  $AC$ ; join  $BC$ , and through  $D$  draw  $DE$  parallel to  $BC$ .

Because  $BC$  is parallel to  $DE$ , a side of the triangle  $ADE$ ,  $AB : BD :: AC : CE$  (2. 6). But  $BD = AC$ ; therefore  $AB : AC :: AC : CE$ . Wherefore to the two given lines  $AB$ ,  $AC$  a third proportional  $CE$  is found. Which was to be done.

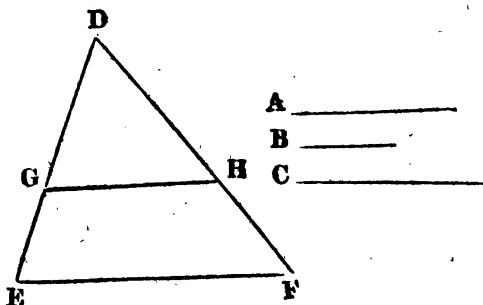


### PROPOSITION XII. PROBLEM.

To find a fourth proportional to three given straight lines.

Let  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  be the three given straight lines; it is required to find a fourth proportional to  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ .

Take two straight lines  $DE$ ,  $DF$ , containing any angle  $EDF$ , and on these make  $DG = A$ ,  $GE = B$ , and  $DH = C$ ; join  $GH$ , and through the point  $E$  draw  $EF$  parallel to  $GH$ . Because



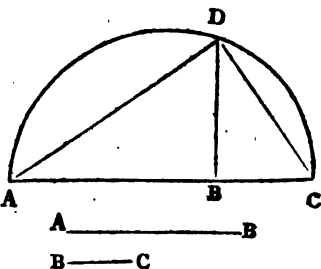
$GH$  is parallel to  $EF$ , one of the sides of the triangle  $DEF$ ,  $DG : GE :: DH : HF$  (2. 6). But  $DG = A$ ,  $GE = B$ , and  $DH = C$ ; therefore  $A : B :: C : HF$ . Wherefore to the three given lines  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  a fourth proportional  $HF$  is found. Which was to be done.

PROPOSITION XIII. PROBLEM.

To find a mean proportional between two given straight lines.

Let  $AB, BC$  be the two given straight lines; it is required to find a mean proportional between them.

Place  $AB, BC$  in a straight line  $AC$ , and on  $AC$  describe the semicircle  $ADC$ ; from the point  $B$  draw  $BD$  perp. to  $AC$ , and join  $AD, DC$ . Then  $BD$  is the mean proportional required.



Because  $ADC$  is a right angle (31. 3), and because  $DB$  is perp. to  $AC$ ,  $DB$  is a mean proportional between  $AB, BC$ , the segments of the base (1 Cor. 8. 61). Therefore between the two given straight lines  $AB, BC$  a mean proportional  $DB$  is found. Which was to be done.

COR. Hence it is manifest that if a straight line be drawn from any point in the circumference of a circle perp. to the diameter, it will be a mean proportional between the segments of the diameter. ED.

PROPOSITION C. THEOREM.

ED.

If a straight line be harmonically divided, the sum of the whole line and one extreme will be to the sum of the other extreme and the middle segment, as the first extreme is to the middle segment.

Let the straight line  $AB$  be harmonically divided in two points  $C$  and  $D$ ;  $AB + BC : AC :: BC : CD$ .



Because  $AB : BC :: AD : DC$  (Def. C. 6),

$AB : AD :: BC : DC$  (Propor. 36), therefore

$AB + BC : AC :: BC : DC$  (Propor. 41).

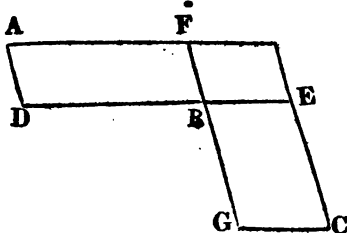
Therefore, if a straight line &c. Q. E. D.

## PROPOSITION XIV. THEOREM.

Equal parallelograms, which have one angle of one parallelogram equal to one angle of the other, have their sides about the equal angles reciprocally proportional; and parallelograms which have one angle of one parallelogram equal to one angle of the other, and their sides about the equal angles reciprocally proportional, are equal to one another.

1. Let  $AB, BC$  be two equal parallelograms, which have the angles at  $B$  equal; the sides about the equal angles are reciprocally proportional, that is,  $DB$  is to  $BE$  as  $GB$  to  $BF$ .

Let the sides  $DB, BE$  be placed in the same line, then the angles  $DBG, GBE$  are equal to two right angles (13. 1), therefore the angles  $DBG, DBF$  are equal to two right angles, because the angles  $DBF, GBE$  are equal; therefore  $FBG$  is a straight line. Complete the paral.  $FE$ . Because the paral.  $AB, BC$  are equal, and  $FE$  is another parallelogram,



$$AB : FE :: BC : FE.$$

$$\text{But } AB : FE :: DB : BE \text{ (1. 6),}$$

$$\text{and } BC : FE :: GB : BF;$$

$$\text{therefore } DB : BE :: GB : BF \text{ (Propor. 34.)}$$

Wherefore the sides of the parallelograms  $AB, BC$  about their equal angles are reciprocally proportional.

2. Let the sides about the equal angles be reciprocally proportional,  $DB$  to  $BE$  as  $GB$  to  $BF$ ; the parallelograms  $AB, BC$  are equal.

$$\text{Because } DB : BE :: GB : BF,$$

$$\text{and } DB : BE :: AB : FE,$$

$$\text{and } GB : BF :: BC : FE,$$

$$AB : FE :: BC : FE \text{ (Propor. 34);}$$

wherefore the parallelograms  $AB, BC$  are equal. Therefore, equal &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. 1. If two triangles, which have one angle of one triangle equal to one angle of the other, be equal to each other, the sides about the equal angles are reciprocally proportional; and conversely. For a triangle is equal to half a paral. of the same base and altitude (41. 1). Ed.

Cor. 2. Equal rectangles have their sides reciprocally proportional; and conversely. Ed.

Cor. 3. Hence if four straight lines be proportional the rectangle contained by the extremes is equal the rectangle contained by the means; and conversely. Ed.

Cor. 4. If three straight lines be proportional the rectangle contained by the extremes is equal to the square of the mean; and conversely. Ed.

Cor. 5. Equal triangles, or equal parallelograms, have their bases and altitudes reciprocally proportional; and conversely. Ed.

PROPOSITION D. THEOREM. LEGENDEE.

Two triangles which have one angle of one triangle equal to one angle of the other are to each other as the rectangles contained by the sides about the equal angles.

Let  $ABC, ADE$ , be two triangles which have the angles at  $A$  equal; the triangle  $ABC : \text{triangle } ADE :: AB \cdot AC : AD \cdot AE$ .

Join  $BE$ . The triangles  $ABE, ADE$ , whose common vertex is  $E$ , have the same altitude, and therefore are to each other as their bases (1. 6), that is,

$ABE : ADE :: AB : AD$ .

In the same manner  $ABC :$

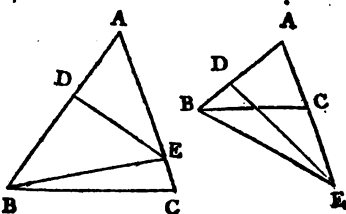
$ABE :: AC : AE$ . Therefore

$ABC : ADE :: AB \cdot AC$

$: AD \cdot AE$  (Propor. 42. 43).  $B$

Therefore, two triangles &c.

$Q. E. D.$



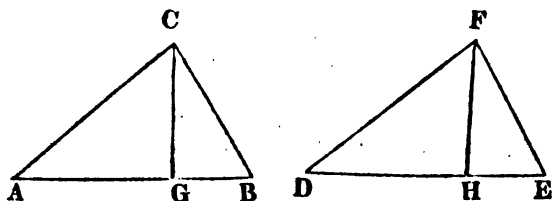
Cor. 1. Two equiangular triangles are to each other as the rectangles contained by the sides about two equal angles.

Cor. 2. Hence, two equiangular parallelograms are to each other as the rectangles contained by the sides about the equal angles.

PROPOSITION XIX. THEOREM.

Similar triangles are to one another in the duplicate ratio of their homologous sides.

Let  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  be two similar triangles, having the angles at  $A$  and  $D$  equal; and let  $AC : AB :: DF : DE$  so that the side  $AB$  be homologous to  $DE$  (Propor. 22); the triangle  $ABC : \text{triangle } DEF :: AB^2 : DE^2$ .



From the angles  $C$  and  $F$  draw the perpendiculars  $CG$  and  $FH$ ; then

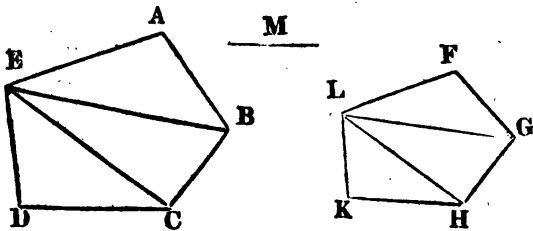
by similar triangles  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$ ,  $AB : DE :: AC : DF$  (4.6), and by similar triangles  $ACG$ ,  $DFH$ ,  $CG : FH :: AC : DF$ ; therefore  $AB \cdot CG : DE \cdot FH :: AC^2 : DF^2$  (Propor. 42). But the rectangle  $AB \cdot CG$  is double of the triangle  $ABC$  (41.1), and the rectangle  $DE \cdot FH$  is double of the triangle  $DEF$ . Consequently the triangle  $ABC : \text{triangle } DEF :: AC^2 : DF^2$ . Therefore, similar triangles &c. Q. E. D. En.

*Otherwise.* The application remaining, the triangle  $ABC : \text{triangle } DEF :: AB \cdot BC : DE \cdot EF$  (1 Cor. D. 6), and  $AB : DE :: BC : EF$  (4.6). For the ratio of  $BC : EF$  in the first proportion substitute the equal ratio of  $AB : DE$ , then the triangle  $ABC : \text{triangle } DEF :: AB \cdot AB : DE \cdot DE$ . Therefore, similar triangles &c. Q. E. D. En.

## PROPOSITION XX. THEOREM.

Similar polygons may be divided into the same number of similar triangles, having the same ratio to one another which the polygons have; and the polygons have to one another the duplicate ratio of that which their homologous sides have.

Let  $ABCDE$ ,  $FGHKL$  be similar polygons, and let  $AB$  be the homologous side to  $FG$ ; the polygons may be divided into the same number of similar triangles, whereof each has to each the same ratio which the polygons have; and the polygon  $ABCDE$  has to  $FGHKL$  the duplicate ratio of that which the side  $AB$  has to  $FG$ .



From any two equal angles  $E$  and  $L$  draw the lines  $EB, EC$ , and  $LG, LH$ . Because the polygon  $ABCDE$  is similar to  $FGHLK$ , the angle  $BAE$  is equal to  $GFL$ , and  $BA : AE :: GF : FL$  (Def. 1. 6); therefore the triangle  $ABE$  is equiangular (6. 6), and similar to the triangle  $FGL$ ; wherefore the angle  $ABE$  is equal to  $FGL$ .

Because the polygons are similar, the whole angles  $ABC, FGH$  are equal; therefore the remaining angles  $EBC, LGH$  are equal. Now because the triangles  $ABE, FGL$  are similar,  $EB : BA :: LG : GF$ ; and because the polygons are similar,  $AB : BC :: FG : GH$ ; therefore  $EB : BC :: LG : GH$  (Propor. 42, 43);

therefore the sides about the equal angles  $EBC, LGH$  are proportional; therefore the triangles  $EBC, LGH$  are equiangular and similar. For the same reason the triangle  $ECD$  is similar to  $LHK$ . Therefore the similar polygons  $ABCDE, FGHLK$  are divided into the same number of similar triangles.

Again, these triangles have, each to each, the same ratio which the polygons have to each other, the antecedents being  $ABE, EBC, ECD$ , and the consequents  $FGL, LGH, LHK$ ; and the polygon  $ABCDE$  has to  $FGHLK$  the duplicate ratio of that which the side  $AB$  has to the homologous side  $FG$ .

Because the triangle  $ABE$  is similar to  $FGL$ ,  $ABE$  has to  $FGL$  the duplicate ratio of that which the side  $BE$  has to  $GL$  (19. 6). For the same reason the triangle  $BEC$  has to  $GLH$  the duplicate ratio of that which the side  $BE$  has to  $GL$ . Therefore the triangle  $ABE : \text{triangle } FGL :: \text{triangle } BEC : \text{triangle } GLH$  (Propor. 34).

Again, because the triangle  $EBC$  is similar to  $LGH$ ,  $EBC$  has to  $LGH$  the duplicate ratio of that which the side  $EC$  has to  $LH$ . For the same reason the triangle  $ECD$  has to  $LHK$  the duplicate ratio of that which  $EC$  has to  $LH$ . Therefore the triangle  $EBC : \text{triangle } LGH :: \text{triangle } ECD : \text{triangle } LHK$  (Propor. 34).

But it has been proved that the triangle  $EBC$  : triangle  $LGH$  :: triangle  $ABE$  : triangle  $FGL$ . Therefore the triangle  $ABE$  : triangle  $FGL$  :: triangle  $EBC$  : triangle  $LGH$  :: triangle  $ECD$  : triangle  $LHK$ ; therefore the triangle  $ABE$  :  $FGL$  :: polygon  $ABCDE$  :  $FGHKL$  (Propor. 41).

But the triangle  $ABE$  :  $FGL$  ::  $AB^2$  :  $FG^2$ . Therefore the polygon  $ABCDE$  : polygon  $FGHKL$  ::  $AB^2$  :  $FG^2$ . Wherefore, similar polygons &c. Q. E. D.

**COR. 1.** In like manner it may be proved that similar figures of four sides, or of any number of sides, are to one another in the duplicate ratio of their homologous sides; and it has been proved in triangles. Therefore, universally, similar rectilineal figures are to one another in the duplicate ratio of their homologous sides.

**COR. 2.** Because all squares are similar figures, the ratio of any two squares to each other is the same with the duplicate ratio of their sides; and hence, also, any two similar rectilineal figures are to each other as the squares of their homologous sides.

**COR. 3.** Two similar triangles, or two similar polygons, are to each other as any rectilineal figure described on any side of one is to a similar figure similarly described on the homologous side of the other.

For the two given figures, and the two similar figures thus similarly described, will have to each other the same duplicate ratio of that which their homologous sides have to each other.

Ed.

### PROPOSITION XXIII. THEOREM.

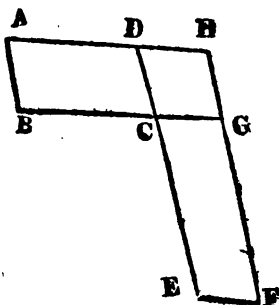
Equiangular parallelograms have to one another the ratio which is compounded of the ratios of their sides about the equal angles; "that is, they are to one another as the rectangles contained by the sides about the equal angles."

Let  $AC$ ,  $CF$  be two equiangular parallelograms, having the angle  $BCD$  equal to  $ECG$ ; the ratio of the paral.  $AC$  to the



paral. CF is the same with the ratio which is compounded of the ratios of their sides about the equal angles; that is, the paral. AC : paral. CF :: BC . CD : EC . CG.

Let BC, CG be placed in a straight line, then, because the angles GCE, BCD are equal, DC, CE are also in a straight line (15. 1). Complete the parallelogram DG. The paral. AC : paral. CH :: BC : CG (1. 6), and the paral. CH : paral. CF :: DC : CE; therefore the paral. AC : paral. CF :: BC . CD : CG . CE (Propor. 42, 43). Therefore, equiangular &c. Q. E. D.



COR. 1. Equiangular triangles have to one another the ratio which is compounded of the ratios of their sides about the equal angles. Ed.

COR. 2. Two parallelograms, which have one angle of one equal to one angle of the other, are to each other in a ratio compounded of the ratios of the sides of one to the sides of the other, each to each, about their equal angles.

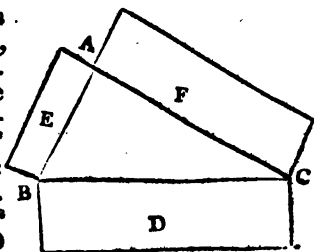
For two paral. having one angle of one paral. equal to one angle of the other are mutually equiangular (E. 1).

### PROPOSITION XXXI. THEOREM.

In a right angled triangle if similar rectilinear figures be similarly described on the three sides, the figure on the hypotenuse will be equal to both the figures on the other two sides.

Let ABC be a right angled triangle, and BAC the right angle; the rectilinear figure D described on the hypotenuse BC is equal to the similar figures E, F, similarly described on BA, AC.

Because similar polygons are as the squares of their homologous sides (20. 6),  $E : AB^2 :: F : AC^2 :: D : BC^2$ ,  $\therefore E + F :: AB^2 + AC^2 :: D : BC^2$  (Propor. B 41). But  $AB^2 + AC^2 = BC^2$  (B. 2), therefore  $E + F = D$  (Propor. 32). Therefore, in a right &c. Q. E. D. LACROIX.

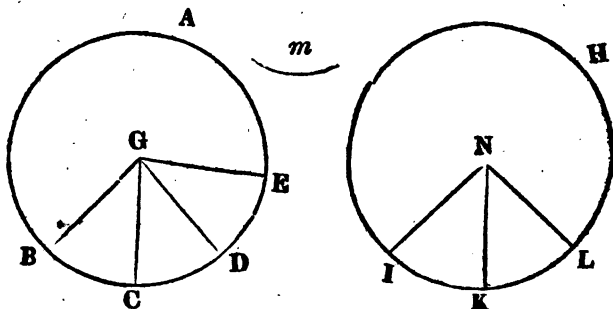


## PROPOSITION XXXIII. THEOREM.

In equal circles angles either at the centres, or at the circumferences, have the same ratio to one another as the arches on which they stand have to one another.—*See Note.*

Let  $ABC, HIK$  be two equal circles, and let  $BGE, INL$  be angles at their centres; the arch  $BE : IL :: \text{angle } BGE : \text{angle } INL$ .

Let the arches  $BE, IL$  be commensurable, and let the small arch  $m$  be their common measure. Divide the arch  $BE$  into parts  $BC, CD, DE$ , each equal to  $m$ ; and divide the arch  $IL$  into parts  $IK, KL$ , each equal to  $m$ . From the centres  $G$  and  $N$  draw straight lines to the several points of division.



The angles  $BGC, CGD$ , &c. of both the circles are equal to one another, because the arches  $BC, CD$ , &c. on which they stand are all equal (27. 3). The angle  $BGE$  contains  $BGC$  as often as the arch  $BE$  contains  $m$ , and the angle  $INL$  contains  $INK$ , or its equal  $PNK$ , as often as the arch  $IL$  contains  $m$ . Consequently the angle  $BGE : BGC :: \text{arch } BE : m$  (Propor. 19), and the angle  $INL : INK :: \text{arch } IL : m$ . These two analogies become, by alternation (Propor. 36), the angle  $BGE : \text{arch } BE :: \text{angle } BGC : m$ , and the angle  $INL : \text{arch } IL :: \text{angle } INK : m$ . Hence the angle  $BGE : \text{arch } BE :: \text{angle } INL : \text{arch } IL$  (Propor. 34),  $\therefore \text{angle } BGE : \text{angle } INL :: \text{arch } BE : \text{arch } IL$ .

Next, because an angle at the circumference of a circle is equal to half the angle at the centre on the same arch (20. 3), half  $BGE : \text{half } INL :: BE : IL$  (Propor. 30). Therefore, in equal circles &c. Q. E. D. Ed.

**COR. 1.** Hence in the same circle the angles at the centre, or at the circumference, are as the arches on which they stand; consequently arches may be assumed as the measures of the magnitudes of angles. ED.

**COR. 2.** An angle at the centre of a circle is to four right angles as the arch on which it stands is to the whole circumference of the circle.

For any angle BGC is to a right angle as the arch BC on which it stands is to a quadrant. But a right angle is one fourth of all the angles about the centre of a circle (3 Cor. 13. 1), and a quadrant is one fourth of the whole circumference. Therefore the angle BGC is to four right angles as the arch BC is to four quadrants, or the whole circumference of the circle (Propor. 30). ED.

**COR. 3.** In unequal circles the arches which subtend equal angles at the centres are to one another as the circumferences of the circles are to one another.

Let A and B denote two unequal circles, then any angle at the centre of A is to four right angles as the arch on which it stands is to the circumference of A (Cor. 2); also an equal angle at the centre of B is to four right angles as the arch on which it stands is to the circumference of B. Therefore the arch of A is to the circumference of A as the similar arch of B is to the circumference of B (Propor. 34). ED.

**COR. 4.** Hence, if the circumferences of any two unequal circles be divided into the same number of equal parts, whatever number of those parts is contained in any arch of one circle, subtending a given angle, the same number of parts will be contained in a similar arch of the other circle, subtending an angle equal to the former. ED.

*Scholium.* It is in consequence of the ratio which subsists between angles at the centre of the same circle, or of equal circles, and the arches which subtend them, that an arch of a circle is called the measure of its corresponding angle. The circumference of the circle is the only curve whose arches increase or decrease in the ratio of the corresponding angles at the centre.

If the circumference of any circle be supposed to be divided into any number of equal parts, as 360, the number of parts contained in any arch BC, which is intercepted by two radii BG, CG, will be the proper measure of the angle BGC.

Mathematicians suppose the circumference of every circle to be divided into 360 equal parts, called *degrees*, and each degree into 60 equal parts, called *minutes*, and each minute into 60 equal parts, called *seconds*, &c.

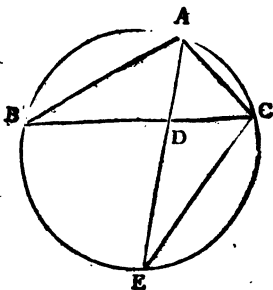
Hence a right angle, being measured by a quadrant contains 90 degrees, the three angles of a triangle, or two right angles, contain 180 degrees, and half a right angle contains 45 degrees. An acute angle is measured by an arch which is less than 90 degrees, and an obtuse angle by an arch which is greater than 90 degrees.

PROPOSITION E. THEOREM. SIMSON.

If an angle of a triangle be bisected by a straight line which cuts the opposite side, the square of that line together with the rectangle contained by the segments of the base are equal to the rectangle contained by the other two sides.

Let ABC be a triangle, and let the angle BAC be bisected by the straight line AD; the square of AD together with the rectangle BD . DC are equal to the rectangle BA . AC.

Suppose the circle ACB to be described about the triangle; produce AD to the circumference in E, and join AC. Then, because the angle BAD is equal to CAE, and the angle ABD to AEC (21. 3), the triangles ABD, AEC are equiangular to each other (2 Cor. 32. 1); therefore  $BA : AD :: EA : AC$  (4. 6), consequently  $BA . AC = AD . AE = ED . DA + DA^2$  (3. 2).<sup>\*</sup> But  $ED . DA = BD . DC$  (35. 3); therefore  $BA . AC = BD . DC + DA^2$ . Wherefore, if an angle &c. Q. E. D.



COR. 1. If a circle be described about a triangle, and a chord be drawn to bisect any angle of the triangle, the rectangle contained by the sides about that angle is equal to the rectangle contained by the chord and its segment intercepted between the vertex and the base of the triangle; or to the rectangle contained by the segments of the chord together with the square of the segment between the vertex and the base of the triangle.

For  $BA . AC = AD . AE = AD . DE + AD^2$ , by the demonstration. Ep.

COR. 2. If the triangle ABC be isosceles, then  $AB^2 = BD^2 + AD^2$ , because the triangles ABD, ACD will be equal in all respects (4. 1), or  $AB^2 = AD . AE$ , or  $AD . DE + AD^2$ . Ep.

---

<sup>\*</sup>  $AD . AE = AD . (AD + DE) = AD^2 + AD . DE$ .

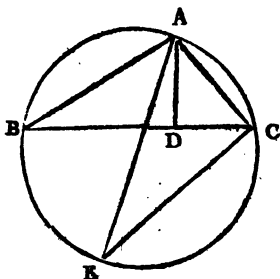
PROPOSITION F. THEOREM.

SIMSON.

If a circle be described about a triangle, and a straight line be drawn from any angle perpendicular to the opposite side, the rectangle contained by the other two sides of the triangle is equal to the rectangle contained by the perpendicular and the diameter of the circle.

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle, and  $AD$  the perp. drawn from the angle  $A$  to the opposite side  $BC$ ; the rectangle  $BA \cdot AC$  is equal to the rectangle contained by  $AD$  and the diameter of the circle described about the triangle.

Suppose the circle  $ACB$  to be described about the triangle; draw its diameter  $AE$ , and join  $EC$ . Because the right angle  $BDA$  is equal to  $ECA$  in a semicircle (31. 3), and the angle  $ABD$  to  $AEC$  in the same segment (21. 3), the triangles  $ABD$ ,  $AEC$  are equiangular; therefore  $BA : AD :: EA : AC$  (4. 6),  $\therefore BA \cdot AC = EA \cdot AD$  (Propor. 26). Therefore, if a circle &c. Q. E. D.



PROPOSITION G. PROBLEM.

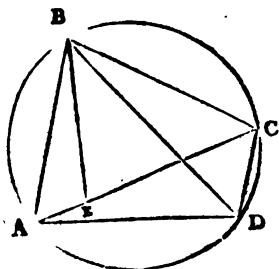
SIMSON.

The rectangle contained by the diagonals of a quadrilateral figure inscribed in a circle is equal to both the rectangles contained by its opposite sides.

Let  $ABCD$  be any quadrilateral inscribed in a circle, and let the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$  be drawn; the rectangle  $AC \cdot BD$  is equal to the two rectangles  $AB \cdot CD$  and  $AD \cdot BC$ , or  $AC \cdot BD = AB \cdot CD + AD \cdot BC$ .

Make the angle  $\angle ABE$  equal to  $\angle DBC$ ; add to each of these the angle  $\angle EBD$ , then the angle  $\angle ABD$  is equal to  $\angle ECB$ . But the angle  $\angle BDA$  is equal to  $\angle BCE$  (21. 3); therefore the triangle  $ABD$  is equiangular to the triangle  $BCE$ ; wherefore  $BC : CE :: BD : DA$  (4. 6),  $\therefore BC \cdot DA = BD \cdot CE$  (Propor. 26).

Again, because the angle  $\angle ABE$  is equal to  $\angle DBC$ , and the angle  $\angle BAE$  to  $\angle BDC$ , the triangle  $ABE$  is equiangular to  $BCD$ ; therefore  $BA : AE :: BD : DC$ ,  $\therefore BA \cdot DC = BD \cdot AE$ . But  $BC \cdot DA = BD \cdot CE$ ; wherefore  $BC \cdot DA + BA \cdot DC = BD \cdot CE + BD \cdot AE = BD \cdot AC$  (1. 2). Therefore, the rectangle &c. Q. E. D.



### PROPOSITION H. THEOREM.

ED.

If two chords of a circle intersect each other, the segments of one chord are reciprocally proportional to the segments of the other.

### PROPOSITION I. THEOREM.

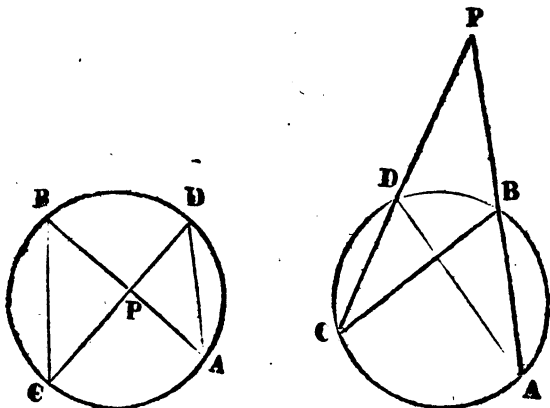
ED.

If from any point without a circle two secants be drawn, they are reciprocally proportional to their external segments, or their segments between the point and the convex circumference.

*(The above two Propositions are demonstrated together as follows).*

Through any point  $P$ , either within or without the circle  $ABC$ , let two lines  $AB, CD$  be drawn to cut or meet the circumference in the points  $A, B, C, D$ ; then  $PA : PC :: PD : PB$ .

Join the points  $A, D, C, B$ , where the two chords or secants meet or cut the circle. In the triangles  $APD, CPB$  the vertical angles at  $P$  are equal, and the angles  $\angle BAD, \angle BCD$  are equal, because they stand on the same arch  $BD$  (27. 3); therefore, in the first case, the angles  $\angle ABC, \angle ADC$  are equal (2 Cor. 32. 1), and in the second case, the angles  $\angle ADP, \angle CBP$



are equal. Hence the triangles ADP, CBP are equiangular, therefore  $PA : PD :: PC : PB$  (4. 6),  $\therefore PA : PC :: PD : PB$  (Propor. 36). Therefore, if &c. Q. E. D.

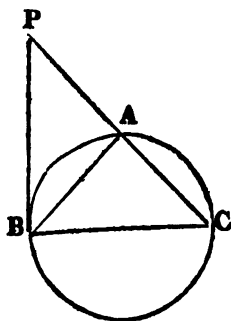
### PROPOSITION K. THEOREM.

ED.

If from any point without a circle a tangent and a secant be drawn, the tangent is a mean proportional between the secant and its external part.

From any point P without the circle ABC let a tangent PB, and a secant PC be drawn;  $PC : PB :: PB : PA$ .

Draw AB, AC; then the triangles APB, CPB, having the angles ABP, PCB equal (32. 3), and the angle P common, are equiangular (2 Cor 32. 1), therefore  $PC : PB :: PB : PA$  (4. 6), or  $AP \cdot PC = PB^2$ . Therefore, if from any &c. Q. E. D.

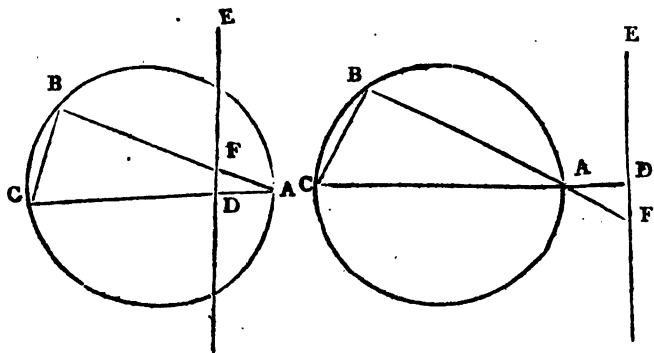


*Note.* The last three Propositions are the same as Prop. 35, B, 36, Book III.

## PROPOSITION L. THEOREM.

If through one extremity of the diameter of a circle a chord be drawn to meet any perpendicular to the same diameter, either within, or produced without the circle, the chord and the diameter will be reciprocally proportional to their segments intercepted between the same extremity of the diameter and the perpendicular.

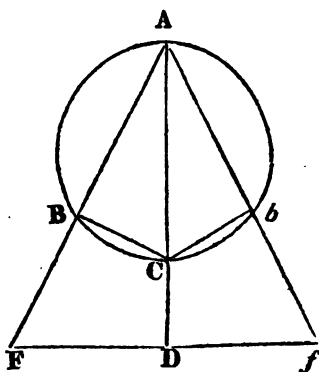
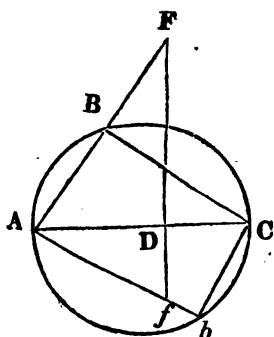
Let  $ABC$  be a circle, of which  $AC$  is a diameter; let  $DE$  be perp. to  $AC$ , and let a chord  $AB$  meet  $DE$  in  $F$ ;  $AB : AC :: AD : AF$ .



Join  $BC$ ; then the angle  $ABC$  is right (31. 3). Now the angle  $ADF$  is right; and the angle  $BAC$  is equal to  $DAF$ , therefore the triangles  $ABC$ ,  $ADF$  are equiangular, therefore  $BA : AC :: AD : AF$ . Therefore, if through one extremity &c. Q. E. D.

**COR.** If through one extremity  $A$  of a diameter  $AC$  of a circle two chords  $AB$ ,  $A\delta$  be drawn to meet any perpendicular  $Ff$  to the same diameter, either within the circle, or if produced, without it, the two chords will be reciprocally proportional to their segments  $AF$ ,  $Af$ . intercepted between the same extremity of the diameter and the perpendicular.





For  $AB : AC :: AD : AF$ , and  $Ab : AC :: AD : Af$ ; therefore  $AB \cdot AF = AC \cdot AD$ , and  $Ab \cdot Af = AC \cdot AD$ ; therefore  $AB \cdot AF = Ab \cdot Af$ ,  $\therefore AB : Ab :: Af : AF$ . **ED.**

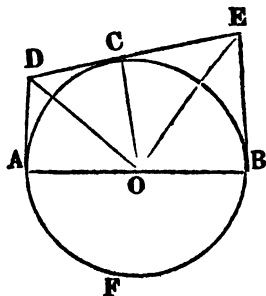
# PROPOSITION M. THEOREM.

**ED.**

If two tangents be drawn from the extremities of any diameter of a circle, and meet a tangent to any point in the circumference, the radius of the circle will be a mean proportional between the segments of the third tangent intercepted between its point of contact and the other two tangents.

Let the line  $DE$  touch the circle  $ACBF$  in  $C$ , and from the extremities of the diameter  $AB$  let the tangents  $AD$ ,  $BE$  be drawn meeting  $DE$  in the points  $D$  and  $E$ ; draw  $OC$ ; then  $OC$  is a mean proportional between the segments  $CD$ ,  $CE$  of the tangent  $DE$ .

Draw  $OD$ ,  $OE$ . The right angled triangles  $AOD$ ,  $COB$ , having  $AO = CO$ , and  $DO$  common, have  $AD = CB$ , and the angles at  $D$  and  $O$  equal ( $\S$  Cor. B. 2). In the same manner the right angled triangles  $BOE$ ,  $COE$  are equal in all respects. The angles  $AOC$ ,  $BOC$  are together equal to two



**T**

right angles, therefore their halves, or the angles  $\text{DOC}$ ,  $\text{EOC}$  are together equal to one right angle, that is,  $\text{DOE}$  is a right angle. The radius  $\text{OC}$  drawn to the point of contact  $\text{C}$  of the tangent  $\text{DE}$  is perp. to  $\text{DE}$  (18. 3), therefore the triangles  $\text{DCO}$ ,  $\text{ECO}$  are similar (8. 6), therefore  $\text{DC} : \text{OC} :: \text{OC} : \text{CE}$  (1 Cor. 8. 6). Therefore, if two tangents &c. **Q. E. D.**

**COR.** It appears from the demon. that if two tangents be drawn from the extremities of any diameter of a circle, and meet another tangent, the angle  $\text{DOE}$  contained by two straight lines  $\text{OD}$ ,  $\text{OE}$  drawn from the centre to the points of concurrence of the tangents is a right angle.

### PROPOSITION N. THEOREM.

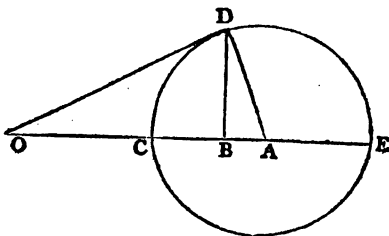
**ED.**

If from any point in a diameter of a circle produced a tangent be drawn, and from the point of contact a perpendicular to the diameter be drawn, the segments of the diameter made by the perpendicular will have the same ratio as the distances of the first point from the extremities of the diameter have to each other.

Let  $\text{A}$  be the centre of the circle  $\text{CDE}$ , and from any point  $\text{O}$  in the diameter  $\text{CE}$  produced draw a tangent  $\text{OD}$ ; from the point of contact  $\text{D}$  draw  $\text{DB}$  perp. to  $\text{CE}$ ;  $\text{CB} : \text{BE} :: \text{OC} : \text{OE}$ .

Join  $\text{DA}$ . Because  $\text{ADO}$  is a right angle (18. 3), and  $\text{DB}$  is perp. to  $\text{AO}$ , the triangles  $\text{ADB}$ ,  $\text{ADO}$  are similar (8. 6), therefore  $\text{AB} : \text{AD} :: \text{AD} : \text{AO}$ , or  $\text{AB} : \text{AC}$

$:: \text{AC} : \text{AO}$ , therefore by mixing (Propor. 40),  $\text{CB} : \text{BE} :: \text{OC} : \text{OE}$ . Therefore, if from &c. **Q. E. D.**



**COR.** In any circle  $\text{CDE}$  if a tangent  $\text{DO}$  meet a radius  $\text{AC}$  produced, and from the point of contact  $\text{D}$  a perpendicular  $\text{DB}$  be drawn to the diameter  $\text{CE}$ , the radius  $\text{AC}$  will be a mean proportional between the radius produced and the distance of the perpendicular from the centre. For by the demon.  $\text{AB} : \text{AC} :: \text{AC} : \text{AO}$ .

**DEF. 1.** The perimeter of any figure is the length of the line, or lines, by which it is bounded.

**DEF. 2.** The surface of any figure is the space contained within its perimeter.

**AXIOM.** If two figures have the same straight line for their base, and if one figure be contained within the other, it has the less perimeter, if its bounding line or lines be no where convex toward the base.

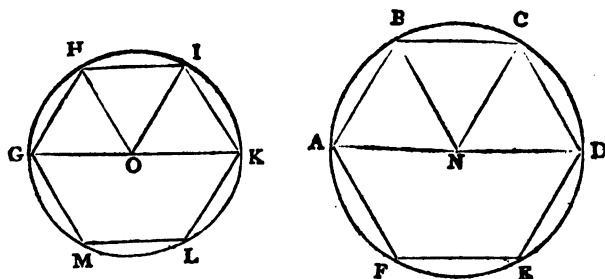
**COR. 1.** Hence the perimeter of any polygon inscribed in a circle is less than the circumference of the circle.

**COR. 2.** If from any point two tangents be drawn to a circle, they are together greater than the arch intercepted between them; and hence the perimeter of any polygon described about a circle is greater than the circumference of the circle.

### PROPOSITION O. THEOREM.\*

Equilateral polygons of the same number of sides, inscribed in circles, are similar, and are to one another as the squares of the diameters of the circles.

Let  $ABCDEF$ ,  $GHIKLM$  be two equilateral polygons of the same number of sides, inscribed in the circles  $ABD$ ,  $GHK$ ; they are similar, and are to each other as the squares of the diameters of the circles.



1. Find  $N$ ,  $O$  the centres of the circles; join  $AN$ ,  $BN$ , and  $GO$ ,  $HO$ ; produce  $AN$  and  $GO$  till they meet the circumferences in  $D$  and  $K$ . Because the straight lines  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CD$ ,  $DE$ ,  $EF$ ,  $FA$  are all equal, the arches  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CD$ ,  $DE$ ,  $EF$ ,

\* The following propositions are transferred from Playfair's First Supplement to the end of Book VI, to which they properly belong.

FA are also equal (28. 3). For the same reason the arches GH, HI, IK, KL, LM, MG are all equal. Therefore, whatever part the arch AB is of the whole circumference ABD, the same part is the arch GH of the whole circumference GHK. But the angle ANB is the same part of four right angles that the arch AB is of the circumference ABD (2 Cor. 33. 6), and the angle GOH is the same part of four right angles that the arch GH is of the circumference GHK; therefore the angles ANB, GOH being each of them the same part of four right angles are equal to each other. Therefore the isosceles triangles ANB, GOH are equiangular (6. 6), and the angle ABN is equal to GHO.

In the same manner, by joining NC, OI, it may be proved that the angles NBC, OHI are equal to each other, and to the angle ABN. Therefore the whole angle ABC is equal to the whole GHI. The same may be proved of the angles BCD, HIK, and also of the rest. Therefore the polygons ABCDEF, GHIKLM are equiangular to each other; and since they are equilateral, the sides about the equal angles are proportionals; therefore the polygon ABCDEF is similar to the polygon GHIKLM (1 Def. 6).

2. Again, because the polygons ABCDEF, GHIKLM have been proved to be similar, the polygon ABCDEF is to GHIKLM as the square of AB to the square of GH (20. 6). But because the triangles ANB, GOH are equiangular, the square of AB is to the square of GH as the square of AN to the square of GO (4. 6), or as the square of AD to the square of GK (Propor. 30). Therefore also the polygon ABCDEF is to GHIKLM as the square of AD to the squares of GK; and they have also been shown to be similar. Therefore, equilateral polygons &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. Every equilateral polygon inscribed in a circle is also equiangular. For the isosceles triangles, which have their common vertex in the centre, are all equal and similar; therefore the angles at their bases are all equal, therefore the angles of the polygons are also equal.

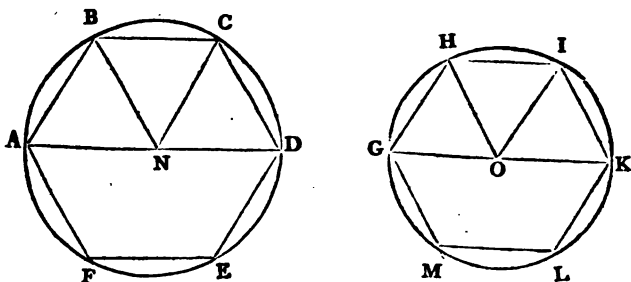
### PROPOSITION P. THEOREM.\*

The homologous sides, and also the perimeters of similar polygons inscribed in circles, are to one another as the diameters of the circles.

---

\* The following Propositions are taken chiefly from Hutton's Mathematics.

Let  $ACE$ ,  $GIL$  be two similar polygons inscribed in the circles  $ABD$ ,  $GHK$ ; the side  $AB$  is to  $GH$  as the diameter  $AD$



to  $GK$ , and the perimeter  $AB + BC + CD$  &c. is to the perimeter  $GH + HI + IK$  &c. as the diameter  $AD$  to  $GK$ .

It may be proved as in the last Prop. that the triangles  $ANB$ ,  $GOH$  are equiangular, therefore  $AB : GH :: AN : GO :: AD : GK$ .

Again, if straight lines be drawn from the centres  $N$ ,  $O$  of the circles to all the angular points of the polygons, it is evident that they will divide the polygons into the same number of equal and similar triangles, whose homologous sides will be to each other as the radii or diameters of the circles. Hence (Propor. 41), the sum of the sides, or the perimeter of the polygon  $ACE$ , is to the perimeter of the polygon  $GIL$ , as the diameter  $AD$  to the diameter  $GK$ . Therefore, the homologous sides &c. Q. E. D.

### PROPOSITION Q. THEOREM.

The circumferences of circles are to one another as their diameters.

Let  $D$  and  $d$  denote the diameters of two circles, and  $C$  and  $c$  the circumferences; then  $D : d :: C : c$ , or  $D : C :: d : c$ .

Let the number of sides of a polygon be indefinitely great, and consequently the length of each side indefinitely small; then will the perimeter of the polygon approach indefinitely near to the circumference of the circle described about it, and therefore may be conceived to coincide with it. But the perimeters of similar polygons of any number of sides inscribed in circles are to one another as the diameters of the circles. Therefore the circumferences of circles are to one another as their diameters. Q. E. D.

**COR.** Similar arches of unequal circles are to one another as the diameters or radii of the circles. For  $D : d :: \frac{1}{2}D : \frac{1}{2}d ::$  any part of  $C$  : same part of  $c$  (Propor. 30).

### PROPOSITION R. THEOREM.

The surfaces of circles are to one another as the squares of their diameters.

Let  $A$  and  $a$  denote the surfaces of two circles,  $D$  and  $d$  their diameters; then  $A : a :: D^2 : d^2$

Let the number of sides of a polygon be indefinitely great, and consequently the length of each side indefinitely small; then the perimeter of the polygon will coincide with the circumference of the circles described about it; therefore their surfaces will become equal. But similar polygons of any number of sides inscribed in circles are to one another as the squares of the diameters of the circles. Hence the surfaces of circles are to one another as the squares of their diameters. Q. E. D.

**COR.** The surfaces of circles are to one another as the squares of their circumferences. For the circumferences are as the diameters (Q).

### PROPOSITION S. THEOREM.

The surface of a circle is equal to a rectangle contained by the radius and a straight line equal to half the circumference.—*See figure, Prop. P.*

Let  $ABDE$  be a circle, of which the centre is  $N$ , and the diameter  $AD$ ; the surface of  $ABDE$  is equal to a rectangle contained by  $AN$  and a line equal to half the circumference  $ABCD$ .

Let a regular polygon be inscribed in the circle, and suppose radii to be drawn from the centre to all the angular points, dividing the polygon into as many equal triangles as it has sides. Let  $ANB$  be one of the triangles, whose altitude is the perpendicular drawn from the centre on the base  $AB$ . The triangle  $ABN$  is equal to half the rectangle under the same base and altitude (41. 1), or the rectangle under its altitude and half its base  $AB$ ; therefore the sum of all the equal triangles which compose the polygon  $ABC$  &c. is equal to the rectangle under the common altitude and half the sum of the sides of the polygon.

Now suppose the number of sides of the polygon to be increased indefinitely, and consequently the length of each side to be decreased indefinitely; then will its perimeter coincide with the circumference of the circle, and the perpendicular from the centre on one of its sides will become equal to the radius. Hence the surface of the polygon will be equal to that of the circle. Consequently the surface of a circle is equal to a rectangle under the radius and a straight line equal to half the circumference. Q. E. D.

**COR. 1.** A circle is equal to a triangle whose altitude is equal to the radius and base equal to the circumference. This is evident from the Prop. and 41. 1.

**COR. 2.** Of all plane figures having equal perimeters the circle is the greatest. For a circle is equal to a triangle whose base is equal to the circumference and altitude equal to the radius (Cor. 1); and, by the demonstration, a polygon is equal to a triangle whose base is equal to the perimeter and altitude equal to the altitude of the polygon. But, by the hypothesis, the perimeter of the polygon is equal to the circumference of the circle; and its altitude is always less than the radius of the circle, which, in this case, is partly within and partly without the polygon. Consequently the surface of the polygon is always less than the surface of the circle.

**COR. 3.** Every regular polygon is equal to a rectangle of which the base is equal to half the perimeter of the polygon, and altitude equal to the perpendicular drawn from the centre on one of the sides.

THE PRINCIPAL THEOREMS IN BOOK VI.

---

Triangles, and also parallelograms, of the same altitude are to one another as their bases.

If a straight line be drawn parallel to one of the sides of a triangle it will cut the other two sides proportionally.

If any angle of a triangle be bisected by a straight line which cuts the base or opposite side, the segments of the base will have the same ratio which the other two sides have to each other.

The sides about the equal angles of equiangular triangles are proportional.

If the sides of two triangles about each of their angles be proportional, the triangles will be equiangular.

If two triangles have one angle of one triangle equal to one angle of the other, and the sides about the equal angles proportional, the triangles will be equiangular.

Equal parallelograms, and also equal triangles, which have one angle of one equal to one angle of the other, have their sides about the equal angles reciprocally proportional; and parallelograms, and also triangles, which have one angle of one equal to one angle of the other, and their sides about the equal angles reciprocally proportional, are equal to one another.

In a right angled triangle if a perpendicular be drawn from the right angle to the hypotenuse, it will divide the triangle into two triangles which are similar to the whole triangle, and also to each other.

In a right angled triangle if a perpendicular be drawn from the right angle to the hypotenuse, it will



be a mean proportional between the segments of the hypotenuse; and each of the sides about the right angle will be a mean proportional between the hypotenuse and the segment adjacent to that side.

If a perpendicular be drawn from any point in the circumference of a circle to the diameter, it will be a mean proportional between the segments of the diameter.

Similar triangles, and all similar figures, are to one another as the squares of their corresponding sides.

Equiangular parallelograms, and also equiangular triangles, are to one another as the the rectangles under the sides about the equal angles.

If three straight lines be proportional, the first is to the third as any rectilineal figure described on the first is to a similar figure similarly described on the second.

In a right angled triangle if similar rectilineal figures be similarly described on the three sides, the figure on the hypotenuse will be equal to both the figures on the other two sides.

In equal circles angles either at the centres or at the circumferences have the same ratio to one another as the arches on which they stand have to one another.

An angle at the centre of a circle is to four right angles as the arch on which it stands is to the circumference of the circle.

In unequal circles arches which subtend equal angles at the centres are to one another as the circumferences of the circles.

The rectangle under the diagonals of a quadrilateral figure inscribed in a circle is equal to both the rectangles under its two opposite sides.

The homologous sides, and also the perimeters of similar polygons inscribed in circles, are to one another as the diameters of the circles.

Equilateral polygons of the same number of sides,

U

inscribed in circles, are similar, and are to one another as the squares of the diameters of the circles.

The diameter of a circle is to the circumference as the square of the radius is to the surface of the circle.

The surface of any circle is equal to the rectangle contained by the radius and a straight line equal to half the circumference; or, it is equal to a triangle whose base is equal to the circumference and altitude equal to the radius of the circle.

Of all plane figures having equal perimeters the circle is the most capacious.

The circumferences of circles are to one another as the diameters; and the surfaces of circles are to one another as the squares of the diameters, or circumferences.

END OF BOOK VI.

# ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY.

## BOOK XI.

### OF THE INTERSECTION OF PLANES.

---

#### DEFINITIONS.—*See Notes.*

1. A straight line is perpendicular to a plane, when it is perpendicular to every straight line meeting it in that plane.

2. A plane is perpendicular to a plane, when all the straight lines drawn in one of the planes perpendicular to the common section of the two planes are perpendicular to the other plane.

3. The inclination of a straight line to a plane is the acute angle contained by that line and another straight line drawn from the point in which the first line meets the plane to the point in which a perpendicular drawn from any point in the first line to the plane meets the plane.

4. The inclination of two planes is the angle contained by two straight lines drawn from any point in the line of their common section perpendicular to that line, one line in one plane, and the other line in the other plane.

5. Two planes are said to have the same, or a like inclination to each other, which two other planes have, when the angles of inclination above defined are equal to each other.

6. A straight line is said to be parallel to a plane, when it has no inclination to the plane, or is equidistant from it.

7. Planes are said to be parallel to one another which are equidistant, or do not meet, though produced ever so far.

8. A solid angle is an angle made by the meeting of more than two plane angles in one point, which are not in the same plane.

## PROPOSITION I. THEOREM.

One part of a straight line cannot be in a plane, and another part above it.

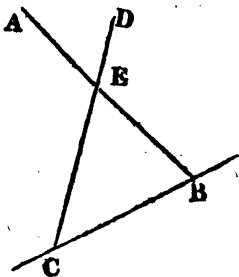
For if one part of a line were in a plane and another part above it, all its parts would not lie in the same direction, and therefore it could not be a straight line (3 Def. 1). Therefore, one part &c. Q. E. D. ED.

## PROPOSITION II. THEOREM.

Any three straight lines which meet one another, but not in the same point, are in one plane.

Let the three straight lines AB, CD, CB meet one another in the points B, C, E; they are in one plane.

Let any plane pass through the line EB, and let the plane revolve round EB as an axis until it pass through the point C; then, because the points E, C are in this plane, the line EC is in it (Def. 8. 1). For the same reason BC is in the same plane; and, by the hypothesis, EB is in it. Therefore the three lines EC, CB, BE are in one plane. But the whole lines DC, AB, BC, produced, are in the same plane with the parts of them EC, EB, BC (1. 11). Therefore AB, CD, CB are all in one plane. Wherefore, any three &c. Q. E. D.

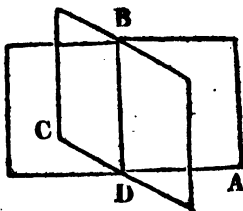


COR. It is manifest that any two straight lines which cut each other are in one plane; and that any three points whatever are in one plane.

## PROPOSITION III. THEOREM.

If two planes cut each other, their common section is a straight line.

Let two planes AB, BC cut each other, and let B, D be two points in the line of their common section. Join BD. Because the points B, D are in the plane AB, the line BD is in the plane AB (Def. 8. 1); and because the points B, D are in the plane BC, the line BD is in the plane BC; therefore the line BD is common to the planes AB and BC, or it is the common section of these planes. Therefore, if two planes &c. Q. E. D.

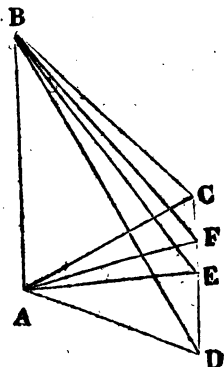


PROPOSITION IV. THEOREM.

If a straight line be perpendicular to each of two straight lines in their point of intersection, it will also be perpendicular to the plane in which those lines are situate.

Let the line AB be perp. to each of the lines AC, AD in their point of intersection A; AB is also perp. to the plane passing through those lines.

Through A draw the line AE bisecting the angle CAD; and also draw any line AF. Take  $AC = AD$ ; draw CD meeting the lines AE, AF in the points E and F; join BC, BD, BE, BF.



Because the side AC is equal to AD, and AE bisects the angle CAD, the side CE = DE, and AEC, AED are right angles (Cor. 10. 1). Consequently  $AD^2 = AE^2 + DE^2$  (B. 2). In the right angled triangles ABC, ABD the side AC = AD, and AB is common, therefore the side BC = BD (2 Cor. B. 2).

Hence the triangles BCE, BDE are equal in all respects (8. 1), therefore the angles BEC, BED are equal, and therefore are right angles. Consequently  $BD^2 = BE^2 + DE^2$ . From these equals take the former equals  $AD^2 = AE^2 + DE^2$ , then the remainders are equal, that is,  $BD^2 - AD^2 = BE^2 - AE^2$ , or  $AB^2 = BE^2 - AE^2$ ; wherefore BAE is a right angle (1 Cor. B. 2), and AB is perp. to AE. Now AEF, BEF are right an-

gled triangles, and therefore  $AF^2 = AE^2 + EF^2$ , and  $BF^2 = BE^2 + EF^2$ . Hence, by taking the former equals from the latter,  $BF^2 - AF^2 = BE^2 - AE^2$ , or  $BF^2 - AF^2 = AB^2$ ; therefore  $BAF$  is a right angle, and  $AB$  is perp. to  $AF$ . But  $AF$  is any line drawn through the point  $A$ ; therefore  $AB$  is perp. to the plane which passes through the lines  $AC$ ,  $AD$  (Def. 1). Therefore, if a straight &c. Q. E. D. NULTY.

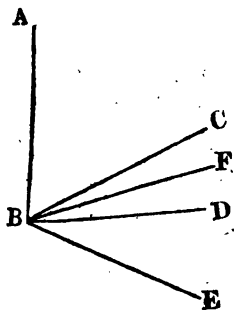
### PROPOSITION V. THEOREM.

If three straight lines meet in one point, and a straight line be perpendicular to each of them in that point, those three lines are in one and the same plane.

Let the line  $AB$  be perp. to each of the three lines  $BC$ ,  $BD$ ,  $BE$ , at the point  $B$  where they meet;  $BC$ ,  $BD$ ,  $BE$  are in one and the same plane.

If not; let, if it be possible,  $BD$  and  $BE$  be in one plane, and  $BC$  above it; and let a plane pass through  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ; then the common section of this plane with the plane in which  $BD$  and  $BE$  are situate will be a straight line (§. 11). Let this line be  $BF$ ; therefore  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $BF$  are in one plane, which passes through  $AB$ ,  $BC$ .

Because  $AB$  is perp. to each of the lines  $BD$ ,  $BE$ , it is also perp. to the plane passing through them (4. 11), and therefore is perp. to every line meeting it in that plane. But  $BF$  meets  $AB$  in that plane; therefore  $ABF$  is a right angle. But, by the hypothesis,  $ABC$  is a right angle; therefore the angle  $ABF$  is equal to  $ABC$ ; that is, because these angles are both in the same plane, a part is equal to the whole, which is impossible. Therefore  $BC$  is not above the plane in which  $BD$  and  $BE$  are situate; wherefore  $BC$ ,  $BD$ ,  $BE$  are in one and the same plane. Therefore, if three &c. Q. E. D.

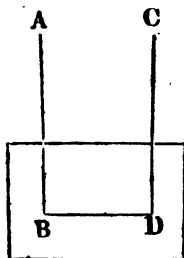


### PROPOSITION VI. THEOREM.

If two straight lines be perpendicular to the same plane they will be parallel to each other.

Let the lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be perp. to the same plane  $BDE$ ;  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$ .

Let the lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  meet the plane in the points  $B$ ,  $D$ ; and let  $B$ ,  $D$  be joined. Because  $AB$ ,  $CD$  are perp. to the same plane, they are also perp. to the line  $BD$  in that plane (Def. 1. 11); therefore they are parallel to each other (Cor. 28. 1). Q. E. D.



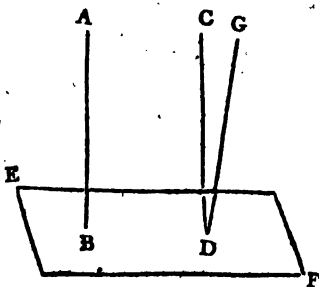
Cor. If two straight lines be parallel, and if one of them be perp. to any plane, the other also will be perp. to the same plane.

### PROPOSITION-VII. THEOREM.

If two straight lines be parallel, and if one of them be perpendicular to a plane, the other also is perpendicular to the same plane.

Let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be two parallel lines, and let one of them  $AB$  be perp. to a plane  $EF$ ; the other  $CD$  is perp. to the same plane.

For, if  $CD$  be not perp. to the plane  $EF$  to which  $AB$  is perp. let  $DG$  be perp. to it; then  $DG$  is parallel to  $AB$  (6. 11). Therefore  $DG$  and  $DC$  are both parallel to  $AB$ , and are drawn through the same point  $D$ , which is impossible (Ax. 10, p. 40). Therefore, if two &c. Q. E. D.



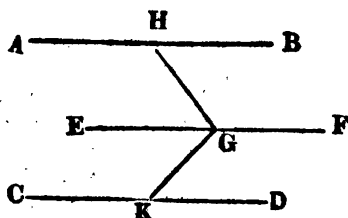
### PROPOSITION VIII. THEOREM.

Two straight lines which are parallel to the same straight line, and are not both in the same plane with it, are parallel to each other.

Let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be each of them parallel to  $EF$ , and not in the same plane with it;  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$ .

In  $EF$  take any point  $G$ , from which draw, in the plane passing through  $EF$ ,  $AB$ , the line  $GH$  perp. to  $EF$ ; and in the

plane passing through EF, CD, draw GK perp. to EF. Because EF is perp. to GH and GK, it is perp. to the plane HGK passing through them (4. 2. Sup.). But EF is parallel to AB; therefore AB is perp. to the plane HGK (7. 2. Sup.). For



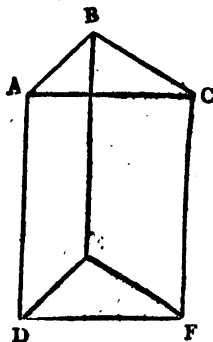
the same reason CD is at right angles to the plane HGK. Therefore AB, CD are perp. to the plane HGK; therefore AB is parallel to CD (6. 2. Sup.). Wherefore, two straight lines &c. Q. E. D.

### PROPOSITION IX. THEOREM.

If two straight lines which meet each other be parallel to two other straight lines which meet each other toward the same parts, though not in the same plane with the first two, the first two lines and the other two will contain equal angles.

Let the two straight lines AB, BC, which meet each other, be parallel to the two straight lines DE, EF, which meet each other toward the same parts as AB, BC, and are not in the same plane with AB, BC; the angle ABC is equal to the angle DEF.

Take BA = ED, and BC = EF; and draw AD, CF, BE, AC, DF. Because BA is equal and parallel to ED, AD is equal and parallel to BE (33. 1); and because BC is equal and parallel to EF, CF is equal and parallel to BE. Therefore AD and CF are equal and parallel to BE; therefore AD is equal and parallel to CF (8. 2 Sup.); therefore AC is equal and parallel to DF. Now because AB, BC are equal to DE, EF, and the base AC to DF, the angle ABC is equal to DEF (8. 1). Therefore, if two straight &c. Q. E. D.



### PROPOSITION X. PROBLEM.

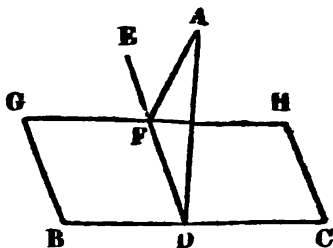
To draw a straight line perpendicular to a plane, from a given point above it,



Let  $A$  be the given point above the plane  $BH$ : it is required to draw from the point  $A$  a straight line perp. to the plane  $BH$ .

In the plane draw any straight line  $BC$ , and from the point  $A$  draw  $AD$  perp. to  $BC$ : then if  $AD$  be also perp. to the plane  $BH$  the thing required is done. But if it be not, from the point  $D$  draw, in the plane  $BH$ , the straight line  $DE$  perp. to  $BC$ ; and from the point  $A$  draw  $AF$  perp. to  $DE$ ; and through  $F$  draw  $GH$  parallel to  $BC$ .

Because  $BC$  is perp. to  $ED$  and  $DA$ , it is perp. to the plane passing through  $ED$ ,  $DA$  (4. 11). But  $GH$  is parallel to  $BC$ ; wherefore  $GH$  is perp. to the plane passing through  $ED$ ,  $DA$  (7. 11), and is therefore perp. to every straight line meeting it in that plane (1 Def. 11). But  $AF$ , which



is in the plane passing through  $ED$ ,  $DA$ , meets  $GH$ ; therefore  $GH$  is perp. to  $AF$ . But  $AF$  is perp. to  $DE$ . Hence  $AF$  is perp. to each of the lines  $GH$ ,  $DE$ ; therefore  $AF$  is perp. to the plane  $BH$ , which passes through  $ED$ ,  $GH$ . Therefore from the given point  $A$  above the plane  $BH$  the straight line  $AF$  is drawn perp. to that plane. Which was to be done.

**COR.** If it be required to erect a perpendicular to a plane from a point  $C$  in the plane, take a point  $A$  above the plane, and draw  $AF$  perp. to the plane; then from  $C$  draw a line parallel to  $AF$ , and it will be the perpendicular required (7. 11).

### PROPOSITION XI. THEOREM.

If two parallel planes be cut by a third plane their sections with it are parallel lines.

For if the lines be not parallel, they must meet if produced; and if they meet, the planes in which they are situate must meet, which is impossible (14 Def. 1). Therefore, if two parallel &c. Q. E. D.

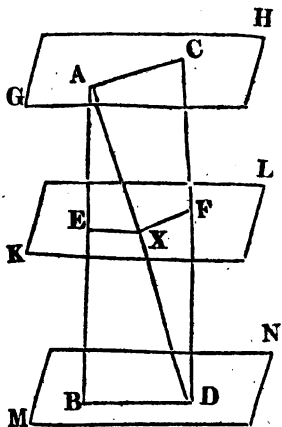
### PROPOSITION XII. THEOREM.

If two straight lines be cut by parallel planes they will be cut in the same ratio.

Let the lines  $AB, CD$  be cut by the parallel planes  $GH, KL, MN$ , in the points  $A, E, B$ , and  $C, F, D$ ;  
 $AE : EB :: CF : FD$ .

Draw  $AC, BD, AD$ ; let  $AD$  meet the plane  $KL$  in the point  $X$ ; draw  $EX, XF$ . Because the parallel planes  $KL, MN$  are cut by the plane  $EBDX$ , the common sections  $EX, BD$  are parallel (11. 11); and because the parallel planes  $GH, KL$  are cut by the plane  $AXFC$ , the common sections  $AC, XF$  are parallel.

Because the line  $EX$  is parallel to  $BD$ , a side of the triangle  $ABD$ ,  $AE : EB :: AX : XD$  (2. 6); and because  $XF$  is parallel to  $AC$ , a side of the triangle  $ADC$ ,  $AX : XD :: CF : FD$ . Therefore  $AE : EB :: CF : FD$  (Propor. 34). Wherefore if two &c. Q. E. D.

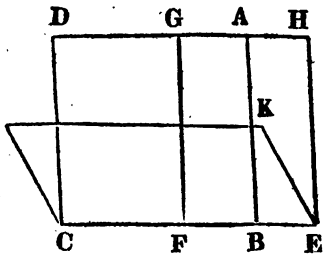


### PROPOSITION XIII. THEOREM.

If a straight line be perpendicular to a plane, every plane which passes through the line is also perpendicular to that plane.

Let the line  $AB$  be perp. to a plane  $CK$ ; every plane which passes through  $AB$  is perp. to the plane  $CK$ .

Let any plane  $DE$  pass through  $AB$ , and let  $CE$  be the common section of the planes  $DE, CK$ ; take any point  $F$  in  $CE$ , from which draw  $FG$  in the plane  $DE$  perp. to  $CE$ . Because  $AB$  is perp. to the plane  $CK$ , it is also perp. to every line meeting it in that plane (1 Def. 11); consequently it is perp. to  $CE$ ; wherefore  $ABF$  is a right angle. But  $GFB$  is a right angle; therefore  $AB$  is parallel to  $FG$  (Cor. 28. 1). But  $AB$  is perp. to the plane  $CK$ ; therefore  $FG$  is also perp. to  $CK$  (7. 11).



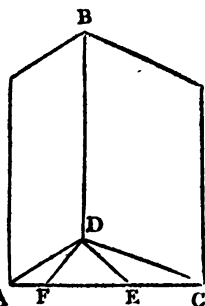
Now any straight line  $FG$  in the plane  $DE$ , which is perp. to  $CE$  the common section of the planes  $CK$ ,  $DE$ , has been proved to be perp. to the other plane  $CK$ ; therefore the plane  $DE$  is perp. to the plane  $CK$  (2 Def. 11). In like manner it may be proved that all the planes which pass through  $AB$  are perp. to the plane  $CK$ . Therefore, if a straight &c. Q. E. D.

PROPOSITION XIV. THEOREM.

If two planes which cut each other be perpendicular to a third plane, their common section will be perpendicular to the third plane.

Let the two planes  $AB$ ,  $BC$  be perp. to a third plane  $ADC$ , and let  $BD$  be the common section of  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ;  $BD$  is perp. to the plane  $ADC$ .

From  $D$  in the plane  $ADC$  draw  $DE$  perp. to  $AD$ , and  $DF$  to  $DC$ . Because  $DE$  is perp. to  $AD$ , the common section of the planes  $AB$  and  $ADC$ , and because the plane  $AB$  is perp. to  $ADC$ ,  $DE$  is perp. to the plane  $AB$  (2 Def. 11), and therefore also to the line  $BD$  in that plane (1 Def. 11). For the same reason  $DF$  is perp. to  $DB$ . Since  $BD$  is perp. to both the lines  $DE$  and  $DF$ , it is perp. to the plane in which  $DE$  and  $DF$  are situate, that is, to the plane  $ADC$  (4. 11). Wherefore, if two planes &c. Q. E. D.



## THE PRINCIPAL THEOREMS IN BOOK XI.

---

Any two straight lines which cut each other are in one plane; and any three straight lines which meet one another in different points are in one plane.

If two planes cut each other, their common section is a straight line.

If a straight line be perpendicular to each of two straight lines in their point of intersection, it will also be perpendicular to the plane in which those lines are situate.

If three straight lines meet in one point, and a straight line be perpendicular to each of them in that point, those three lines are in one and the same plane.

If two straight lines be perpendicular to the same plane they will be parallel to each other.

If two straight lines be parallel, and if one of them be perpendicular to a plane, the other also is perpendicular to the same plane.

Two straight lines which are parallel to the same straight line, and are not both in the same plane with it, are parallel to each other.

If two straight lines which meet each other be parallel to two other straight lines which meet each other toward the same parts, though not in the same plane with the first two, the first two lines and the other two will contain equal angles.

If two parallel planes be cut by a third plane, their common sections with it are parallel.

If two straight lines be cut by parallel planes they will be cut in the same ratio.

If a straight line be perpendicular to a plane, every plane which passes through the line is also perpendicular to that plane.

END OF BOOK XI.

# ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY.

## BOOK XII.

### OF THE PROPERTIES OF SOLIDS.

---

#### DEFINITIONS.

1. A solid is that magnitude which has length, breadth and thickness.

2. Similar solid figures are such as are contained by the same number of similar planes similarly situate, and having like inclinations to one another.

3. A pyramid is a solid figure contained by more than two triangular planes that are constituted between one plane base and a point above it in which the planes meet.

4. A prism is a solid figure contained by plane figures, of which two that are opposite are equal, similar, and parallel to each other; and the rest are parallelograms.

*Note.*—Prisms and pyramids take particular names according to the figure of their bases. Thus, if the base be a triangle, it is called a triangular prism or pyramid; if a square, it is called a square prism or pyramid. ED.

5. A parallelopiped is a prism, or solid figure, contained by six quadrilateral figures, whereof every opposite two are parallel.

6. A cube is a solid figure contained by six equal squares.

7. A sphere is a solid figure described by the revolution of a semicircle about a diameter, which remains unmoved: or, a sphere is a solid figure bounded by one curve surface, which is every where equally distant from a certain point within it called the centre.

8. The **axis** of a sphere is the fixed straight line about which the semicircle revolves.

9. The centre of a sphere is the same with that of a semicircle by which it is described.

10. The **diameter** of a sphere is any straight line which passes through the centre, and is terminated both ways by the superficies of the sphere.

11. A cone is a solid figure described by the revolution of a straight line round the circumference of a circle, one end of which line is fixed at a point above the plane of the circle.

12. The **axis** of a cone is the straight line joining the vertex, or fixed point, and the centre of the circle about which the cone is described.

13. The **base** of a cone is the circle about which the describing line revolves.

14. A cylinder is a solid figure described by the revolution of a rectangle about one of its sides, which remains fixed.

15. The **axis** of a cylinder is the fixed straight line about which the rectangle revolves.

16. The **bases** of a cylinder are the circles described by the two revolving opposite sides of the rectangle.

17. Similar cones and cylinders are those which have their axis and the diameters of their bases proportionals.

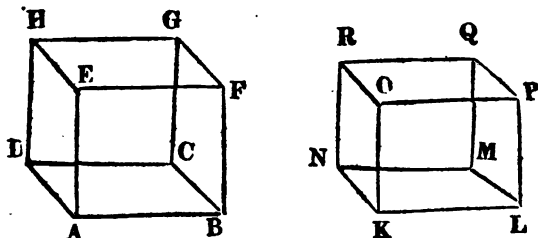
---

### PROPOSITION I. THEOREM.

If two solids be contained by the same number of equal and similar planes, similarly situated, and if the inclination of any two contiguous planes in one solid be the same with the inclination of the two equal and similarly situated planes in the other, the solids are equal and similar.

Let AG, KQ be two solids contained by the same number of equal and similar planes, similarly situated, so that the plane AC is similar and equal to KM, the plane AF to KP, BG to LQ, GD to QN, DE to NO, and FH to PR; and let the inclination of the plane AF to AC be the same with the inclination of the plane KP to KM, and so of the rest; the solid KQ is equal and similar to the solid AG.

Let the solid **KQ** be applied to **AG**, so that the bases **KM** and **AC**, which are equal and similar, may coincide (8 Ax. 1), the point **N** coinciding with the point **D**, **K** with **A**, **L** with **B**, and **M** with **C**. Because the plane **KM** coincides with **AC**,



and, by hypothesis, the inclination of **KR** to **KM** is the same with the inclination of **AH** to **AC**, the plane **KR** will be on the plane **AH**, and will coincide with it, because they are similar and equal, and because their equal sides **KN** and **AD** coincide. And in the same manner it may be shown that the other planes of the solid **KQ** coincide with the other planes of the solid **AG**, each with each. Wherefore the solids **KQ** and **AG** wholly coincide, and are equal and similar to each other. Therefore, if two solids &c. Q. E. D.

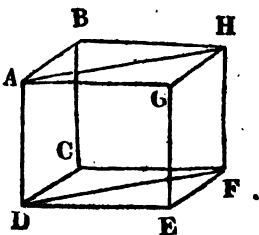
## PROPOSITION II. THEOREM.

If a solid be contained by six planes, of which two and two are parallel, the opposite planes are similar and equal parallelograms.

Let the solid **CDGH** be contained by the parallel planes **AC** and **GF**, **BG** and **CE**, **FB** and **AE**; its opposite planes are similar and equal parallelograms.

Because the two parallel planes **BG**, **CE** are cut by the plane **AC**, their common sections **AB**, **CD** are parallel (11. 11); and because the two parallel planes **BF**, **AE** are cut by the plane **AC**, their common sections **AD**, **BC** are parallel. Hence **AC** is a parallelogram. In like manner it may be proved that each of the figures **CE**, **FG**, **GB**, **BF**, **AE** is a parallelogram.

Draw **AH**, **DF**. Because **AB** is parallel to **DC**, and **BH** to **CF**, the angle



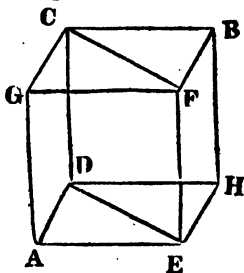
$ABH$  is equal to  $DCF$  (9. 11). Because  $AB, BH$  are equal to  $DC, CF$ , and the angle  $ABH$  is equal to  $DCF$ , the base  $AH$  is equal to  $DF$ , and the triangle  $ABH$  to  $DCF$ . For the same reason the triangle  $AGH$  is equal to  $DEF$ . Therefore the parallelogram  $BG$  is equal and similar to  $CE$ . In the same manner it may be proved that the parallelogram  $AC$  is equal and similar to  $GF$ , and the parallelogram  $AE$  to  $BF$ . Therefore, if a solid &c. Q. E. D.

### PROPOSITION III. THEOREM.

If a solid parallelopiped be cut by a diagonal plane, that is, by a plane passing through the diagonals of two of the opposite planes, it will be divided into two equal prisms.

Let  $AB$  be a solid parallelopiped, and  $DE, CF$  the diagonals of the opposite parallelograms  $AH, GB$ , namely, those which are drawn between the equal angles in each. Because  $CD, FE$  are parallel to  $GA$ , though not in the same plane with it, they are parallel to each other (8. 11); wherefore the diagonals  $CF, DE$  are in the same plane as the parallels, and are also parallel (11. 11). The plane  $CDEF$  will divide the solid  $AB$  into two equal parts.

The triangle  $CGF$  is equal to  $CBF$  (34. 1), and the triangle  $DAE$  to  $DHE$ ; and the parallelogram  $CA$  is equal and similar to the opposite one  $BE$  (2. 12), and the parallelogram  $GE$  to  $CH$ ; therefore the corresponding planes which contain the prisms  $CAE, CBE$ , are equal and similar, each to each. They are also equally inclined to each other, because the planes  $AC, EB$  are parallel, and also  $AF, BD$ , and they are cut by the plane  $CE$ . Therefore the prism  $CAE$  is equal to the prism  $CBE$  (1. 12), and the solid  $AB$  is divided into two equal prisms by the plane  $CDEF$ . Therefore, if a solid &c. Q. E. D.



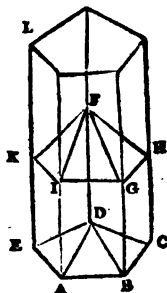


PROPOSITION IV. THEOREM.

If a prism be cut by a plane parallel to the base the section will be equal and like to the base

Let LB be a prism, of which the base is ABCDE, and a section parallel to the base is IGHFK; the section is equal to and like the base.

Draw AD, DB, and IF, FG: Because the planes IGHFK and ABCDE are parallel (by hyp.), and the plane AF cuts them, the sections IF and AD are parallel (11. 11). For the same reason the sections GF and BD are parallel. Because DF and AI are parallel to EK (4 Def. 11), DF is parallel to AI (8. 11). In the same manner DF is parallel to BG. Consequently AF and BF are parallelograms, therefore the side AD = IF (34. 1), and the side BD = GF.



Because the two lines AD, BD meeting each other in D are parallel to the two lines IF, GF meeting each other in F, the angle ADB is equal to IFG (9. 11). Hence the triangles ADB, IFG are equal in all respects (4. 1.).

In the same manner it may be proved that each triangle in the section IGHFK is equal to its corresponding triangle in the base ABCDE. Therefore the sum of all the triangles in the section is equal to the sum of all the triangles in the base, or the section is equal to the base. Also the base and section are alike, because the triangles of which they consist are equal in all respects. Therefore, if a prism &c. Q. E. D.

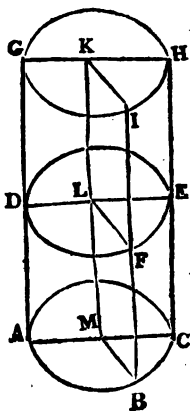
PROPOSITION V. THEOREM.

If a cylinder be cut by a plane parallel to the base, the section will be a circle, and equal to the base

Let AH be a cylinder, of which the base is ABC, and a section parallel to the base is DFE; the section is a circle equal to the circular base ABC.

X

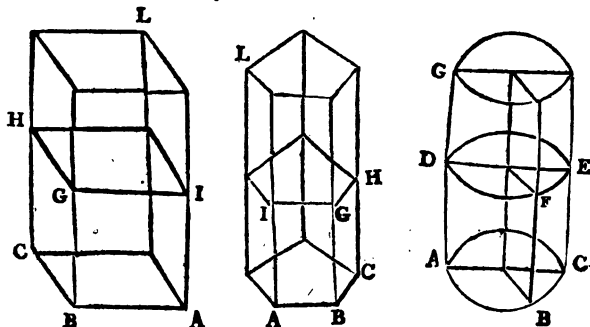
Let the planes  $MKIB$ ,  $MKHC$  pass through  $MK$ , the axis of the cylinder, and meet the section  $DFE$  in the points  $L$ ,  $F$ ,  $E$ . Because the plane  $MKIB$  cuts the parallel planes  $ABC$ ,  $DFE$ , the sections  $MB$ ,  $LF$  are parallel (11. 11); and because the plane  $MKHC$  cuts the same planes, the sections  $LE$ ,  $MC$  are parallel. Now  $CH$  and  $BI$  are parallel to  $MK$  (14 Def. 12), therefore  $CE$  and  $BF$  are parallel to  $ML$ , therefore  $MF$  and  $ME$  are parallelograms, therefore  $LF = MB$ , and  $LE = MC$ . But  $MB = MC$ , therefore  $LF = LE$ . In the same manner it may be proved that all straight lines drawn from the point  $L$  to the circumference of the section  $DFE$  are equal to one another. Therefore  $DFE$  is a circle, and it is equal to the circular base  $ABC$  (1 Def. 3). Therefore, if a cylinder &c.  $Q. E. D.$



### PROPOSITION VI. THEOREM.

Prisms and cylinders of equal bases and altitudes are all equal to one another.

Let  $LB$ ,  $LB$  be two prisms, and  $GB$  a cylinder, having equal bases  $ABC$ , and equal altitudes; the two prisms are equal to each other and to the cylinder.



Suppose the prisms and cylinder to stand on the same plane, and be cut by planes parallel to their bases, making the corresponding sections  $IGH$ ,  $DFE$ . The section  $IGH$  is equal to the base  $ABC$  of the prisms (4. 12), and the section  $DFE$  is equal to the base  $ABC$  of the cylinder (5. 12).

But these bases are equal (by hyp.), therefore the sections  $IGH$ ,  $DFE$  are equal. For the same reason every section in each of the prisms is equal to the corresponding section of the cylinder.

Now if we consider these parallel sections as plates (or laminæ) extremely thin, and their number as indefinitely great, we may conceive the three bodies to be composed of an indefinite number of such elementary plates, of which the aggregate is equivalent to the magnitude or volume of each of the bodies. And since the extent and number of the parallel sections or plates are equal in the several bodies the magnitudes of the bodies must be equal. Therefore, prisms &c. Q. E. D. See Note.

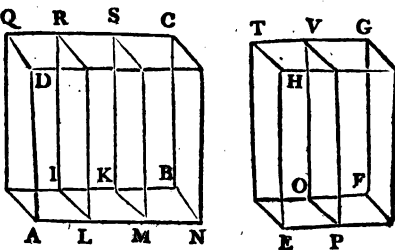
Cor. Rectangular parallelopipeds of equal bases and altitudes are equal to one another. For they are prisms (5 Def. 12).

### PROPOSITION VII. THEOREM.

Rectangular parallelopipeds of equal altitudes are to one another as their bases.

Let  $AC$ ,  $EG$  be two rectangular parallelopipeds of equal altitudes  $AD$ ,  $EH$ ;  $AC : EG :: \text{base } AB : \text{base } EF$ .

Let the bases  $AB$  and  $EF$  be to each other as any numbers  $m$  (3) and  $p$  (2), that is, let  $AB : EF :: m : n$ . Let  $AB$  be divided into  $m$  equal rectangles,  $AI$ ,  $LK$ ,  $MB$ ; and  $EF$  into  $n$  equal rectangles,  $EO$ ,  $PF$ , each equal to the former.



Construct the parallelopipeds  $AR$ ,  $LS$ , &c. Because the solids  $AR$ ,  $LS$ , &c. have equal bases and altitudes they are equal to one another (6. 12); therefore the solid  $AC : EG :: \text{no. of parts in } AC : \text{no. of parts in } EG :: \text{no. of parts in } AB : \text{no. of parts in } EF :: \text{base } AB : \text{base } EF$ . Therefore, rectangular &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. prisms and cylinders are to one another as their bases. For all prisms, cylinders, and rectangular parallelopipeds of equal bases and altitudes are equal to one another (6. 12 and Cor.).

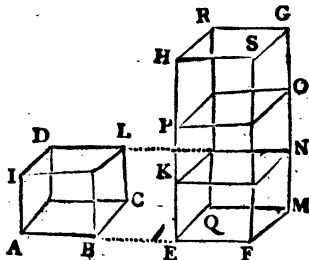
## PROPOSITION VIII. THEOREM.

Rectangular parallelopipeds of equal bases are to one another as their altitudes.

Let  $AL$ ,  $EG$  be two rectangular parallelopipeds on equal bases  $AC$ ,  $EM$ ;  $AL : EG :: \text{alt. } AI : EH$  or  $MG$ .

In  $EH$ , the greater altitude, take  $EK = AI$ , and let a plane pass through  $KN$ , making  $MN = EK$ . Because the base  $AC = \text{base } EM$  (by hyp.), and the alt.  $AI = \text{alt. } EK$ , the solid  $AL = \text{solid } EN$  (6. 12).

Because a parallelopiped is bounded by parallelograms, of which every opposite two are equal, similar, and parallel (Def. 12), any one of those parallelograms may be considered as its base. Hence the solid  $EN : \text{solid } EG :: \text{base } FN : \text{base } FG$ , for the altitudes  $MQ$  and  $GR$  are equal (7. 12). But the parallelogram  $FN : FG :: \text{base } MN : MG$ , because the altitudes  $MF$ ,  $GS$  are equal (1. 6). Consequently the solid  $EN : \text{solid } EG :: \text{alt. } MN : \text{alt. } MG$  (Propor. 34). But the solid  $AL = EN$ , and the alt.  $MN$  or  $EK = \text{alt. } AI$ ; therefore the solid  $AL : \text{solid } EG :: \text{alt. } AI : \text{alt. } MG$  or  $EH$ . Therefore, rectangular &c. Q. E. D.



**COR.** Prisms and also cylinders on equal bases are to one another as their altitudes. For a rectangular parallelopiped is equal to a prism or cylinder of equal base and altitude (6. 12).

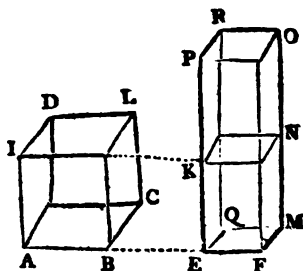
## PROPOSITION IX. THEOREM.

The bases and altitudes of equal rectangular parallelopipeds are reciprocally proportional; and if the bases and altitudes of rectangular parallelopipeds be reciprocally proportional, the parallelopipeds are equal to one another.

1. Let  $AL$  and  $EO$  be two equal rect. parallelopipeds; the base  $AC : EM :: \text{altitude } EP : AI$ .

Let  $EN$  be a rect. parallelopiped on the base  $EM$ , and let its altitude  $EK$  be equal to the altitude  $AI$  of the rect. parallelopiped  $AL$ .

Because the altitudes  $AI$  and  $EK$  are equal, the solid  $AL : EN :: \text{base } AC : EM$  (7. 12); and because the solid  $AL = EO$ , the solid  $EO : EN :: \text{base } AC : EM$ . But  $EO : EN :: \text{alt. } EP : EK$  or  $AI$  (8. 12); therefore the base  $AC : EM :: \text{alt. } EP : AI$  (Propor. 34).



2. Let the base  $AC$  be to  $EM$  as the alt.  $EP$  is to  $AI$ ; the solid  $AL = EO$ .

Because the base  $AC : EM :: \text{alt. } EP : AI$  or  $EK$ , and because the base  $AC : EM :: \text{solid } AL : EN$  (7. 12); the alt.  $EP : EK$  or  $AI :: \text{solid } AL : EN$  (Propor. 34). But the alt.  $EP : EK :: \text{solid } EO : EN$  (8. 12); therefore  $AL : EN :: EO : EN$ , therefore  $AL = EO$  (Propor. 32). Therefore, the bases &c. Q. E. D.

**Cor. 1.** The bases and altitudes of equal prisms, or of equal cylinders, are reciprocally proportional; and if the bases and altitudes be reciprocally proportional, the prisms or cylinders are equal.

**Cor. 2.** The solidity or volume of a rectangular parallelepiped, or of a prism, or a cylinder, is equal to the product of the area of the base multiplied by the altitude.

For it has been proved that the base  $AC : EM :: \text{alt. } EP : AI$ , therefore  $AC \cdot AI = EM \cdot EP$  (Propor. 26); and the solid  $AL = EO$ .

## PROPOSITION X. THEOREM.

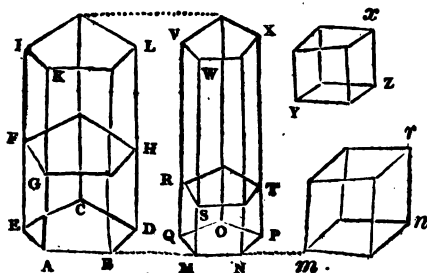
Similar prisms are to one another as the cubes of their like sides.

Let  $AL$  and  $MX$  be similar prisms, of which the bases are  $ABDCE$  and  $MNPOQ$ , and the like sides  $AB, MN$ : then  $AL : MX :: \text{cube of } AB : \text{cube of } MN$ .

Make  $AG = AB$ , and  $MS = MN$ ; and let  $FGH, RST$  be sections parallel to the bases  $ABDCE, MNPOQ$ . Let  $mr$  and  $yz$  be the cubes of the lines  $AB$  and  $MN$ ; then the bases  $mn$  and  $yz$  are the squares of  $AB$  and  $MN$ .

The prism  $AL : AH :: \text{alt. } AK : AG$  or  $AB$  (Cor. 3. 12), and the prism  $MX : MT :: \text{alt. } MW : MS$  or  $MN$ . The planes  $KAB, WMN$  are similar (2 Def. 12), therefore

$AK : AB$  or  $AG :: MW : MN$  or  $MS$  (1 Def. 6). Consequently the prism  $AL : AH ::$  prism  $MX : MT$  (Propor. 34), therefore  $AL : MX :: AH : MT$  (Propor. 36).



The base  $mn$  or  $AB^3 : ABDCE ::$  prism or cube  $mr : AH$  (7. 12 and Cor.), and the base  $yz$  or  $MN^3 : MNPOQ ::$  prism or cube  $yz : MT$ . But  $AB^3 : ABDCE :: MN^3 : MNPOQ$  (1 Cor. 20. 6). Consequently the prism  $mr : AH ::$  prism  $yz : MT$  (Propor. 34), therefore  $mr : yz :: AH : MT$  (Propor. 36). Now it has been proved that the prism  $AL : MX ::$  prism  $AH : MT$ ; therefore the cube  $mr : yz ::$  prism  $AL : MX$  (Propor. 34). But the cube  $mr = AB^3$ , and the cube  $yz = MN^3$  (by hyp.). Hence the prism  $AL : MX :: AB^3 : MN^3$ . Therefore, similar prisms &c. Q. E. D.

Cor. 1. Similar rectangular parallelopipeds are to one another as the cubes of their like sides; and similar cylinders are to one another as the cubes of their diameters.

Cor. 2. Similar prisms, parallelopipeds, and cylinders are to one another as the cubes of their altitudes respectively.

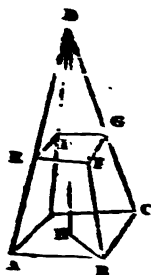
### PROPOSITION XI. THEOREM.

If a pyramid be cut by a plane parallel to its base, the section will be similar to the base; and the section and the base will be to each other as the squares of their distances from the vertex of the pyramid.

1. Let  $ABCD$  be a pyramid, and  $EFG$  a section parallel to the base  $ABC$ . From the vertex  $D$  draw  $DI$  perp. to the section  $EFG$  (10. 11), and produce  $DI$  to meet  $ABC$  in  $H$ . The section  $EFG$  will be similar to the base  $ABC$ ; and  $ABC : EFG :: HD^2 : ID^2$ .

Join  $IF$  and  $HB$ . Because the parallel planes  $ABC, EFG$  are

cut by the plane DAB, the sections AB and EF are parallel (11. 11); and because the same planes are cut by the plane DBC, the sections BC and FG are parallel. Because the two lines AB, BC, meeting in B, are parallel to the two lines EF, FG, meeting in F, the angle ABC is equal to EFG (9. 11). In the same manner it may be shown that each of the angles in the section EFG is equal to each of the corresponding angles in the base ABC.



Again, since EF and AB are parallel, and in the same plane DAB, the triangles ABD, EFD are similar, therefore  $DF : DB :: EF : AB$  (4. 6). For the same reason  $DF : DB :: FG : BC$ . Hence  $EF : AB :: FG : BC$  (Propor. 34).

It has been proved that the section EFG and the base ABC are equiangular, and have their sides about the equal angles proportional; therefore EFG and ABC are similar (1 Def. 6).

2. Because the lines DH and DB are cut by the parallel planes EFG, ABC,  $DB : DF :: DH : DI$  (12. 11). But it has been proved that  $DB : DF :: AB : EF$ . Consequently  $DH : DI :: AB : EF$  (Propor. 34); therefore  $DH^2 : DI^2 :: AB^2 : EF^2$  (Propor. 44). But the base ABC and the section EFG are similar, therefore  $AB^2 : EF^2 :: ABC : EFG$  (1 Cor. 20. 6); therefore  $ABC : EFG :: DH^2 : DI^2$  (Propor. 34). Now DI is perp. to the plane EFG (by const.), therefore DI is the distance between the vertex D and EFG (Cor. C. 1). But the base ABC is parallel to EFG; therefore it is evident that any two corresponding lines IF, HB in those planes are parallel. Hence DHB is a right angle (Cor. 29. 1), therefore the perp. DH is the distance between D and the base ABC. Therefore, if a pyramid &c. Q. E. D.

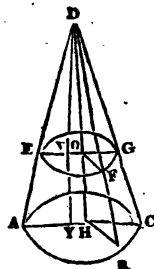
## PROPOSITION XII. THEOREM.

If a cone be cut by a plane parallel to its base, the section will be a circle; and the section and the base will be to each other as the squares of their distances from the vertex of the cone.

Let ABCD be a cone, and EFG a section parallel to the base ABC; from the vertex D draw DV perp. to EFG (10. 11), and produce it to meet the plane ABC in Y. The section EFG will be a circle, and  $ABC : EFG :: DY^2 : DV^2$ .

1. Let the planes  $DHB$ ,  $DHC$  pass through  $DH$ , the axis of the cone, and meet  $EFG$  in the points  $O$ ,  $F$ ,  $G$ . Because the planes  $DHB$ ,  $DHC$  cut the parallel planes  $EFG$ ,  $ABC$ , the section  $OF$  is parallel to  $HB$ , and the section  $OG$  to  $HC$  (11.11). Since  $OF$  is parallel to  $HB$ , the angle  $DOF$  is equal to  $DHB$  (29.1), and the angle  $D$  is common to the triangles  $DOF$ ,  $DHB$ , therefore the triangles are similar. In the same manner it may be proved that the triangles  $DOG$ ,  $DHC$  are similar. Consequently  $DH : DO :: HB : OF$  (4.6), and  $DH : DO :: HC : OG$ ; therefore  $HB : OF :: HC : OG$  (Propor. 34), therefore  $HB : HC :: OF : OG$  (Propor. 36). But the radius  $HB = HC$ , therefore  $OF = OG$  (Propor. 31). In the same manner it may be shown that all lines drawn from  $O$  to the perimeter of the section  $EFG$  are equal, therefore  $EFG$  is a circle.

2. Because the lines  $DY$  and  $DH$  are cut by the parallel planes  $EFG$ ,  $ABC$ ,  $DV : DY :: DO : DH$  (12.11); and it has been proved that  $DO : DH :: OF : HB$ ; therefore  $DV : DY :: OF : HB$  (Propor. 34), therefore  $DV^2 : DY^2 :: OF^2 : HB^2$  (Propor. 44). But  $OF^2 : HB^2 :: \text{circle } EFG : \text{circle } ABC$  (R.6). Consequently the base  $ABC : \text{section } EFG :: DY^2 : DV^2$ , and  $DY$ ,  $DV$  are the distances of the vertex from the planes  $ABC$ ,  $EFG$ , as was shown in the last prop. Therefore, if a cone &c. Q. E. D.



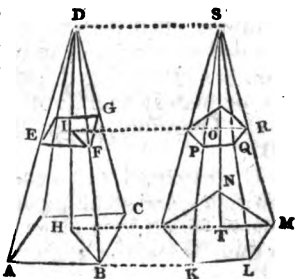
### PROPOSITION XIII. THEOREM.

Pyramids of equal bases and altitudes are equal to one another.

Let the pyramids  $ABCD$ ,  $KLMS$ , standing on the same plane, have equal bases  $ABC$ ,  $KLMN$ , and equal altitudes  $DH$ ,  $ST$ ; the pyramid  $ABCD$  is equal to  $KLMS$ .



Let the sections  $EFG$ ,  $PQR$  be parallel to the bases  $ABC$ ,  $KLMN$  respectively; and let the distances  $DI$ ,  $SO$  of the vertexes  $D$ ,  $S$  from the sections be equal. Then  $ABC : EFG :: DH^2 : DI^2$  (13. 12), and  $KLMN : PQR :: ST^2 : SO^2$ . But  $DH = ST$ , and  $DI = SO$ ; therefore  $DH^2 = ST^2$ , and  $DI^2 = SO^2$  (Propor. 44); also the base  $ABC = KLMN$ , therefore the section  $EFG = PQR$ . In the same manner it may be proved that any other two sections at equal distances from the vertexes are equal to each other. But the pyramids are supposed to consist of an infinite number of equal and parallel sections or plates; therefore they are equal. Therefore, pyramids &c. **Q. E. D.**



**Cor.** If pyramids of equal altitudes, and standing on the same plane, be cut by a plane parallel to their bases, the sections and bases will be proportional.

#### PROPOSITION XIV. THEOREM.

Pyramids and cones of equal bases and altitudes are equal to one another.

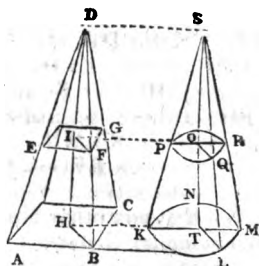
Let the pyramid  $ABCD$  and the cone  $KLMS$  stand on equal bases  $ABC$ ,  $KLMN$ , and have equal altitudes  $DH$ ,  $ST$ ; the pyramid is equal to the cone.

Let the sections  $EFG$ ,  $PQR$ , be parallel to the bases  $ABC$ ,  $KLMN$ , respectively; and let  $DI$ ,  $SO$ , the distances of the vertexes from the sections  $EFG$ ,  $PQR$ , be equal. Then  $ABC : EFG :: DH^2 : DI^2$  (11. 12), and  $KLMN : PQR :: ST^2 : SO^2$  (12. 12). But  $DH = ST$ , and  $DI = SO$ ; therefore  $DH^2 = ST^2$ , and  $DI^2 = SO^2$  (Propor. 44). Hence  $ABC : EFG :: KLMN$

Y

: PQR. But  $ABC = KLMN$ , therefore  $EFG = PQR$  (Propor. 32). In the same manner it may be proved that any two sections at equal distances from the vertexes of the pyramid and cone are equal to each other. But the two solids are supposed to consist of an indefinite number of equal and parallel sections or plates; therefore they are equal. Therefore, pyramids &c Q. E. D.

Cor. If a pyramid and a cone of equal altitudes, and standing on the same plane, be cut by a plane parallel to their bases, the sections and the bases will be proportional.

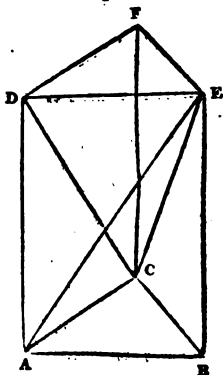


### PROPOSITION XV. THEOREM.

Every prism having a triangular base may be divided into three pyramids which have triangular bases, and are equal to one another.\*

Let  $ABC - DEF$  be a triangular prism; it may be divided into three equal pyramids having triangular bases.

Join  $AE, EC, CD$ . Because  $ABED$  is a parallelogram, of which  $AE$  is the diagonal, the triangle  $ADE$  is equal to  $ABE$  (34. 1); therefore the pyramid  $C - ADE$  is equal to the pyramid  $C - ABE$  (13. 12). But the pyramid  $C - ABE$  is equal to the pyramid  $C - DEF$ , for they have equal bases,  $ABC, DFE$ , and the altitude of the prism  $ABCDEF$ . Therefore the three pyramids  $ADEC, ABEC, DFEC$  are equal to one another. But these pyramids compose the whole prism; therefore the prism  $ABCDEF$  is divided into three equal pyramids. Wherefore, every prism &c. Q. E. D.



Cor. 1. From this it is manifest that every pyramid is the third part of a prism of the same base and altitude; for if the base of the prism be any other figure but a triangle, it may be divided into prisms having triangular bases.

\* Learners will scarcely understand the demon. of this prop. without models of the three pyramids.

Cor. 2. Pyramids of equal altitudes are to one another as their bases; because the prisms on the same bases as the pyramids, and of the same altitude, are to one another as their bases (Cor. 7. 12).

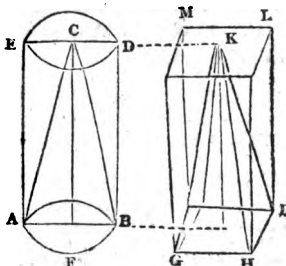
Cor. 3. Similar pyramids are to one another as the cubes of their homologous sides (10. 10).

### PROPOSITION XVI. THEOREM.

Every cone is a third part of a cylinder of the same base and altitude.

Let  $AFBC$  be a cone, and  $AFBDE$  a cylinder of the same base and altitude; the cone is a third part of the cylinder.

Let  $GHIK$  be a pyramid, and  $GHILM$  a prism on the same base  $GHI$  and of the same altitude, and let the base and altitude of the prism be equal to those of the cylinder. Then the cylinder is equal to the prism (6. 12), and the cone is equal to the pyramid (14. 12). But the pyramid  $GHIK$  is a third part of the prism  $GHILM$  (Cor. 15. 12), therefore the cone  $AFBC$  is a third part of the cylinder  $AFBDE$ . Therefore, every cone &c. Q. E. D.

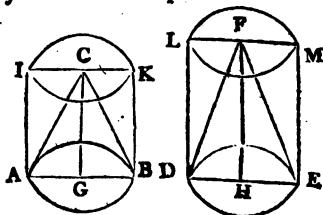


### PROPOSITION XVII. THEOREM.

Cones of equal bases are to one another as their altitudes.

Let  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$  be cones of equal bases, and of unequal altitudes  $CG$ ,  $FH$ ; the cone  $ABC : DEF :: \text{alt. } CG : FH$ .

Let  $ABKI$ ,  $DEML$  be cylinders of equal bases, then  $ABKI : DEML :: \text{alt. } CG : FH$  (Cor. 8. 12). But the cone  $ABC$  is a third of  $ABKI$  (16. 12), and the cone  $DEF$  is a third of  $DEML$ ; therefore  $ABC : DEF :: \text{alt. } CG : FH$  (Propor. 30). Therefore, cones &c. Q. E. D.



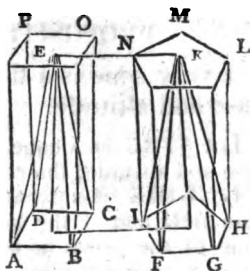
Cor. Pyramids of equal bases are to one another as their altitudes. For cones and pyramids of equal bases and altitudes are equal to one another (14. 12).

## PROPOSITION XVIII. THEOREM.

Pyramids of equal altitudes are to one another as their bases.

Let  $ABCE$ ,  $FGHK$  be two pyramids having equal altitudes, but unequal bases  $ABCD$ ,  $FGHI$ ; the pyramid  $ABCE : FGHK ::$  base  $ABCD : FGHI$ .

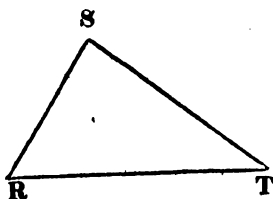
For prisms of equal altitudes are to one another as their bases (Cor. 7. 12), therefore the prism  $ABCOP : FGHLMN ::$  base  $ABCD : FGHI$ . But a pyramid is one third of a prism of the same base and altitude (Cor. 15. 12); therefore the pyramid  $ABCE : FGHK ::$  base  $ABCD : FGHI$ . Wherefore, pyramids &c. Q. E. D.



Cor. Cones of equal altitudes are to one another as their bases.

For a cone is equal to a pyramid of the same base and altitude (16. 12).

**LEMMA.** In a right angled triangle if circles, or similar segments of circles, be described on the three sides, the figure described on the hypotenuse is equal to both the figures described on the other two sides.



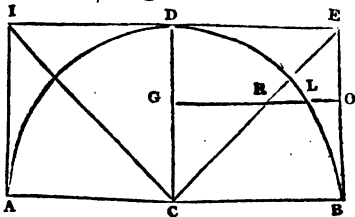
For the fig. on  $RS : \text{fig. on } RT :: RS^2 : RT^2$  (R. 6),  
and the fig. on  $ST : \text{fig. on } RT :: ST^2 : RT^2$ ;  
therefore the fig. on  $RS : RS^2 :: \text{fig. on } RT : RT^2$  (Propor. 36),  
and the fig. on  $ST : ST^2 :: \text{fig. on } RT : RT^2$ ;  
therefore the fig. on  $RS : RS^2 :: \text{fig. on } ST : ST^2$  (Propor. 34),  
therefore the fig. on  $RS + \text{fig. on } ST :: RS^2 + ST^2 :: \text{fig. on } RT : RT^2$  (Propor. 41). But  $RS^2 + ST^2 = RT^2$  (B. 2), therefore the fig. on  $RS + \text{fig. on } ST = \text{fig. on } RT$  (Propor. 32). Therefore, in a right &c. Q. E. D.

PROPOSITION XIX. THEOREM.

EVERY sphere is two thirds of the circumscribing cylinder; that is, of a cylinder having the same altitude and diameter as the sphere.

Let  $ADBCA$  be a hemisphere, and  $AIDEBCA$  a cylinder described about it; the hemisphere is equal to two thirds of the circumscribing cylinder.

Let  $ADB$  be a semicircle, of which the centre is  $C$ ; let  $CD$  be perp. to  $AB$ ; let  $DEBC$  and  $DIAC$  be squares described on  $DC$ ; draw the diagonal  $CE$ , and through any point  $G$  in  $DC$  draw  $GO$  parallel to  $DE$ . Let the figure thus constructed revolve about  $DC$ ; then the square  $DEBC$  will describe a cylinder; the sector  $BCD$ , which is a quadrant, will describe a hemisphere, of which  $C$  is the centre (7 Def.); and the triangle  $CDE$  will describe a cone having its vertex at  $C$  (11 Def.), and having for its base the circle described by  $DE$ , equal to the circle described by  $CB$ , which circle is the base of the hemisphere.



Let  $L$  be the point in which  $GO$  meets the semicircle  $ADB$ , and suppose  $CL$  to be joined; then, in the rotation of the plane  $DEBC$  on  $DC$  the three lines  $GO$ ,  $GL$ ,  $GR$ , will describe circular sections of the cylinder, hemisphere, and cone respectively. Since  $CGL$  is a right angle, the two circles described with the distances  $CG$ ,  $GL$ , are together equal to the circle described with the distance  $CL$  or  $GO$  (Lemma.).

Now the triangles  $CDE$  and  $CGR$  are equiangular, therefore  $CD : CG :: DE : GR$ . But  $CD = DE$ , therefore  $CG = GR$  (Propor. 32). Therefore the circles described with the distances  $GR$  and  $GL$  are together equal to the circle described with the distance  $GO$ ; that is, the circles described by the revolution of  $GR$  and  $GL$  about the point  $G$  are together equal to the circle described by the revolution of  $GO$  about  $G$ ; or the circular sections of the cone and sphere are together equal to the corresponding section of the cylinder. And because this is the case in every parallel position of  $GO$ , it follows that the cylinder  $AE$  is equal to the cone  $CEI$  and the hemisphere  $ADBA$ . But the cone  $CEI$  is a third part of the cylinder  $AE$  having the same base and altitude (17. 12); consequently the hemisphere  $ADBA$  is equal to the remaining two thirds of the cylinder  $AE$ . Therefore the whole sphere is equal to two thirds

of twice the cylinder AE, that is, to two thirds of the circumscribing cylinder. Therefore, every sphere &c. Q. E. D.\* ED.

**COR. 1.** A cone, a hemisphere, and a cylinder, of the same base and altitude, are to one another as the numbers 1, 2, 3. For it has been proved that a cone is one third (6. 12), and a hemisphere two thirds of a cylinder of the same base and altitude.

**COR. 2.** Spheres are to one another as the cubes of their diameters.

For cylinders of the same altitude are to one another as the cubes of their diameters (1 Cor. 10. 12); and a sphere is two thirds of a cylinder of which the diameter and altitude are both equal to the diameter of the sphere. Therefore spheres &c.

---

\* Similar demonstrations of this proposition may be seen in West's Elements of Mathematics, Saunderson's Algebra, and Keith's Euclid.

## THE PRINCIPAL THEOREMS IN BOOK XII.

---

Prisms and cylinders of equal bases and altitudes are all equal to one another.

Prisms and cylinders of equal altitudes are to one another as their bases; and prisms and cylinders of equal bases are to one another as their altitudes.

The bases and altitudes of equal prisms, or of equal cylinders, are reciprocally proportional.

Similar prisms are to one another as the cubes of their like sides; and similar cylinders are to one another as the cubes of their diameters.

Similar prisms, and similar cylinders, are to one another as the cubes of their altitudes respectively.

If a cone, or a pyramid, be cut by a plane parallel to its base, the section will be similar to the base; and the section and the base will be to each other as the squares of their distances from the vertex.

Pyramids and cones of equal bases and altitudes are all equal to one another.

A pyramid is the third part of a prism, and a cone is the third part of a cylinder, of the same base and altitude.

Cones, and also pyramids, of equal altitudes are to one another as their bases.

Cones, and also pyramids, of equal bases are to one another as their altitudes.

Every sphere is two thirds of its circumscribing cylinder.

Spheres are to one another as the cubes of their diameters.

## NOTES ON BOOK I.

The first Book of Euclid's Elements contains the principles of all the following Books: it demonstrates some of the most general properties of straight lines, angles, triangles, parallel lines, parallelograms, and other rectilineal figures: it shows the method of constructing certain figures, and of performing different operations.

Some propositions are of little or no use, and may be omitted. Some of these are auxiliary propositions, and were introduced into the Elements merely for the purpose of facilitating the demonstrations of others. Thus, the 16th proposition is implied in the 32nd, and is useless after the 32nd proposition is demonstrated.

The propositions in the first book are not arranged according to the nature of the subjects, but in such order as is adapted to facilitate their demonstrations. By a different arrangement some useless propositions might have been excluded, and perhaps better demonstrations of others might have been given.

### DEFINITIONS.

Def. 3. *Line* signifies a stroke, and, in reference to the operation of writing, expresses the boundary or contour of a figure. A straight line has two radical properties, which are distinctly marked in different languages. Firstly, it holds the same un-deviating course, and secondly, it traces the shortest distance between its extreme points. The first property is expressed by the word *recta* in Latin, and *droite* in French; and the second property seems to be intimated by the English term *straight*, which is evidently derived from the verb to *stretch*. Accordingly Proclus defines a straight line as stretched between its extremities, and consequently must be the shortest distance between them.

LESLIE.

Cor. Def. 7. The equality of all right angles is an obvious inference from the formation and definition of a right angle. M. Legendre makes this corollary a proposition, and demonstrates it by a difficult process, which is scarcely intelligible to learners.



## AXIOMS.

"On the principle of congruency Euclid lays down a few simple truths, from which he demonstrates the more complex truths which depend on this principle. Those obvious truths are as follows.

"1. All points coincide.

"2. Straight lines which are equal to one another coincide; and, conversely, straight lines whose extremities coincide are equal.

"3. In two equal angles if the vertexes coincide, and one side of one angle coincide with one side of the other, then the remaining side of the first angle will coincide with the remaining side of the second. Likewise all angles whose sides coincide are equal.

"Though Euclid has not separately enounced those particular axioms subordinate to the general axiom, yet he applies them, as we shall find by analyzing several of his demonstrations."

FENN'S EUCLID.

"That which is here numbered the eighth axiom is not properly an axiom, but a definition. It is the definition of geometrical equality; the fundamental principle on which the comparison of all geometrical magnitudes will be found ultimately to depend.

"The geometrical notions of *equality* and *coincidence* are the same; and even in comparing together spaces of different figures all our conclusions ultimately rest on the imaginary application of one triangle to another; the object of which imaginary application is merely to *identify* the two triangles together in every circumstance connected both with magnitude and figure."

STEWART'S PHILOSOPHY.

## PROPOSITIONS.

Of two propositions one is contrary, or contradictory to the other, when we deny in one what is affirmed in the other. Thus, two lines cannot be equal and unequal at the same time.

Of two propositions one is the *converse* of the other, when the order of either of them is inverted. Thus, if two sides of a plane triangle be equal, it can be proved that the angles opposite to those sides are equal. Now if we invert the order of this proposition, we shall obtain another proposition which is the converse of it. Thus, if two angles of a plane triangle be equal, it can be proved that the sides opposite to those angles are equal. This proposition is said to be the converse of the former. In the first proposition two sides of a triangle are supposed to be equal, and the equality of the two opposite angles is thence inferred; in the second proposition two angles of

Z

a triangle are supposed to be equal, and the equality of the opposite sides is thence inferred. The two propositions placed in succession may be expressed thus. If two sides of a plane triangle be equal, the angles opposite to those sides are equal; and, conversely, if two angles of a plane triangle be equal, the sides opposite to those angles are equal. Converse propositions are generally true, but not always so. When they are obviously and necessarily true they require no demonstration. Thus, the converse proposition above is sufficiently clear, and needs no proof. The demonstrations are generally indirect, artificial, and scarcely intelligible to students. In some cases it is necessary to apply indirect demonstrations. Thus, it sometimes happens that two magnitudes may be proved to be equal to each other, by showing that if we suppose them unequal, this supposition would involve an absurdity.

### PROPOSITION I, II, III.

By a *given finite line* Euclid means a line given both in position and in magnitude. A line may be given in position, but not in magnitude; or it may be given in magnitude (and therefore is finite), but not in position.

In all the propositions in plane geometry Euclid supposes all lines and all parts of figures to be in the same plane.

Euclid's construction and demonstration of the first proposition are tediously minute, and may be expressed as clearly and more concisely as follows. From the centres A and B, with the radius AB, describe two circles cutting each other in some point C. From C draw CA, CB; then ABC is the triangle required. For AC is equal to AB, because they are radii of the same circle (20 Def), and BC is equal to AB. Therefore AC is equal to BC (1 Ax.). Therefore the three sides AB, AC, BC are equal to one another; therefore ABC is an equilateral triangle.

Modern geometers generally assume the second and third propositions as postulates, or evident principles, which require no proof. Euclid's demonstration of the second proposition is artificial, and somewhat obscure to students. The demonstration of the third prop. depends on the second, and therefore is equally exceptionable. Euclid's solutions of those problems are so like pedantic trifling that I have retained them with reluctance, and have given others in the Notes, which are practical and modern.

The following demonstrations involve the idea of motion, or the translation of a magnitude from one place to another. Euclid employs motion in some of his demonstrations; and modern geometers admit it in all parts of mathematics.

Any assumptions or constructions may be employed in demonstrations which are *manifestly* possible, or have been already shown to be possible.

The following observations are taken from Cresswell's *Geometry*, Preface, page 19.

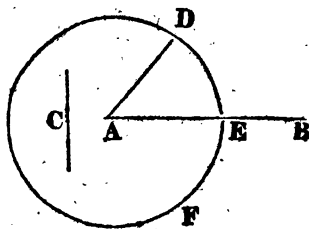
"We readily perceive when we consider the nature of continued quantity that in any given finite line there is a point which divides it into two equal parts; and it follows from the definition of a circle that every given circle has a centre : so that in reasoning about lines and circles we always assume those points without any impropriety. In developing the theory of geometry we may also show the possible existence of a point, a line, or a surface, which shall have some particular position; or, in the case of a line, or a surface, some assigned magnitude. This, indeed, is the most proper mode of proceeding while we are pursuing the course of a science of pure reasoning."

### PROPOSITION II. PROBLEM.

From a given point to draw a straight line equal to a given straight line.

Let A be the given point, and C the given straight line, it is required to draw from A a straight line equal to C.

From the centre A, with the radius C, describe a circle; and from A to any point D in the circumference draw a line AD; then AD is equal to C (20 Def.).



### PROPOSITION III. PROBLEM

From the greater of two given straight lines to cut off a part equal to the less.—(See last figure.)

Let AB and C be the given straight lines, of which AB is the greater. It is required to cut off from AB a part equal to C.

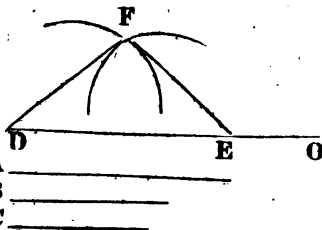
From the centre A, with the radius C, describe a circle cutting AB in E (3. post.), then AE is a part cut off equal to C (20 Def.).

## PROPOSITION XXII. PROBLEM.

To construct a plane triangle of which the three sides are given.

Let the straight lines  $A, B, C$  represent the three sides of the triangle. It is required to construct a triangle of which the three sides shall be equal to  $A, B, C$ , each to each.

From any point  $D$  draw an indefinite straight line  $DO$ , and to it apply the longest side  $A$ , extending from  $D$  to  $E$ . From the centre  $D$ , with a radius equal to  $B$ , describe a circle, and from the centre  $E$ , with a radius equal to  $C$ , describe another circle.



Then, because the sides  $B$  and  $C$  together are greater than  $A$  (20. 1), the circles will cut each other in some point  $F$ . Draw the straight lines  $DF$  and  $EF$ . Then  $DEF$  is the triangle required.

For  $DE$  is equal to  $A$  by construction, and because all the radii of the same circle are equal (20 Def.)  $DF$  is equal to  $B$ , and  $EF$  is equal to  $C$ . Therefore the three sides of the triangle  $DEF$  are equal to the three given straight lines  $A, B, C$ , each to each.

Cor. If the sides  $B$  and  $C$  be equal the triangle will be isosceles; and if all the sides be equal to one another the triangle will be equilateral, and the problem becomes the same as Euclid's first proposition.

## NOTES ON BOOK II.

This book treats of the segments of lines and of the rectangles and squares contained by the parts of a straight line divided in a certain manner, and proves that they are equal to other rectangles or squares contained by the parts of the same line divided in a different manner; it also treats of the equality of rectangles and squares contained by the sides, and parts of the sides, of triangles.

If lines and numbers be divided into parts in the same manner, the properties of the parts of both are the same, and may be easily and concisely demonstrated by the first principles of algebra.

Some of the propositions in this book are of no practical use, and are not referred to in the demonstrations of subsequent pro-

positions. The geometrical demonstrations of them are tedious or difficult. Hence, according to the example of recent writers, it was deemed expedient to omit them in this work.

In the second book some common algebraical signs have been introduced for the sake of representing more concisely and clearly the addition and subtraction of the rectangles on which the demonstrations depend. The concise language of algebra brings the steps of the reasoning nearer to one another, and the force of the whole is more clearly and directly perceived by the reader. Some of Euclid's demonstrations have been changed for others which are shorter and plainer.

As some writers and teachers, particularly of the old school of mathematics, object to the use of symbols in geometry, and still adhere to the verbose and tedious style of Dr. Simson's translation of Euclid's Elements, I annex a short extract from the preface to Elements of Geometry by D. Cresswell, M. A. Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Mr. Cresswell recommends the use of symbols in geometry from his own experience.

"Throughout the following work certain symbols are used for the sake of conciseness, many of which are borrowed from the language of universal arithmetic. They are merely abbreviated representations of the words, and the phrases, for which they are severally put. Without affecting the nature of the demonstrations they render the force of them more easily and more quickly perceived. This plan is followed by most of the foreign mathematicians who have written on the subject of geometry."

Playfair expresses the same sentiment.

In the demonstrations of certain propositions Euclid assumes two principles which appear to be sufficiently evident.

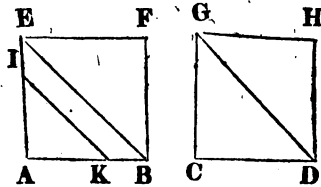
1. Squares described on equal straight lines are equal to one another. *See Cor. 2. F. 1.*

2. The sides of equal squares are equal to one another.

These two propositions may be easily demonstrated as follows.

1. Let AF, CH be two squares described on equal straight lines AB, CD. The squares AF, CH are equal.

Draw the diagonals BE, DG. Because the two sides AE, AB are equal to the two sides CG, CD, each to each (by hyp.), and the angle BAE is equal to DCG, the triangles BAE, DCG are equal. But the triangle BAE is half



of the paral. AF (34. 1), and the triangle DCG is half of the paral. CH. Consequently the parals. AF, CH are equal (6 Ax.) Therefore, squares &c. Q. E. D.

**Cor.** Parallelograms which have two sides of one equal to two sides of the other, each to each, and have also the angles contained by those sides equal, are equal in all respects.

2. Let the squares  $AF, CH$  be equal to each other; the sides  $AB, CD$  are equal.

If  $AB, CD$  be not equal, one of them is greater than the other. Let  $AB$  be the greater, and make  $AK, AI$  each equal to  $CD$ . Because  $AK, AI$  are each equal to  $CD$ , and  $CD$  is equal to  $CG, AI$  is equal to  $CG$ ; therefore the two sides  $AK, AI$  are equal to the two sides  $CD, CG$  each to each; and the angles  $A$  and  $C$  are equal; therefore the triangles  $IAK, GCD$  are equal. The triangles  $GCD, EAB$  are the halves of the equal squares  $CH, AF$ , therefore they are equal. Hence the triangle  $IAK$  is equal to  $EAB$ , the less to the greater, which is impossible. Therefore the side  $AB$  is not greater than  $CD$ . In the same manner it may be proved that  $AB$  is not less than  $CD$ . Consequently  $AB$  is equal to  $CD$ . Therefore, the sides &c. **Q. E. D.**

**Cor.** The square of a greater line is greater than the square of a less line.

The following curious proposition may be easily demonstrated by means of the figure of Prop. B. 2.

In a right angled triangle  $ABC$  if the sides  $DA, EB$ , of the square  $AE$  described on the hypotenuse  $AB$ , be produced to meet the sides (produced if necessary) of the squares described on the two sides  $AC, BC$ , in  $K$  and  $N$ , the triangles  $AFK, BIN$ , cut off by them will be equal and equiangular to the given triangle.

From the right angles  $BAK, CAF$  take the common angle  $CAK$ , then the angle  $BAC = FAK$ . The right angle  $AFK = ACB$ , and the side  $AF = AC$ . Consequently the triangles  $AFK, ABC$  are equal in all respects (A. 1).

Again, from the right angles  $CBI, ABN$  take the common angle  $CBN$ , then the angle  $IBN = ABC$ . The right angle  $I = ACB$ , and the side  $BI = BC$ . Consequently the triangles  $IBN, ABC$  are equal in all respects. Therefore, in a right &c. **Q. E. D.**

### NOTES ON BOOK. III

This book contains the fundamental properties of circles, respecting lines, angles, and figures inscribed in them, and lines cutting or touching them, &c.

Many propositions in this book have been omitted, because they are seldom or never read in places of education. Some useful elementary propositions, found in modern books of geometry, have been added; and some demonstrations of certain propositions, which are shorter or plainer than Euclid's, have been substituted for them.

## PROPOSITION I.

There is a defect in Euclid's demonstration of this proposition which has escaped the notice of Simson and Playfair. For if any point H be taken in CD, and Euclid's demonstration be applied, word for word, the angles FDB, HDB will be equal, and therefore no absurdity will follow. the demonstration has been corrected according to Fenn's Euclid.

## NOTES ON BOOK IV.

This book treats solely of the description of regular polygons in and about a circle, and the description of a circle in and about regular polygons. The subjects of it make a part of practical geometry, to which it properly belongs. It is not read in the English universities, nor, I believe, in any of ours.

## NOTES ON BOOK VI.

The principal object of Book VI is to apply the doctrine of ratio and proportion to lines, angles, rectilinear figures, and circles. This book treats of the ratios of similar rectilinear figures, of angles and their opposite arches, of the diameters and circumferences of circles, and their diameters and surfaces. The propositions in this book constitute the most important part of plane geometry, for they are applicable to all the various departments of mathematics in which geometry is concerned.

## PROPOSITION I.

If there be any objection to the latter part of the demonstration of this proposition, the following alteration may be substituted in line 5, bottom of page 110.

The triangle ACH : triangle ADL :: no. of equal parts in ACH : no. of equal parts in ADL. But the no. of parts in ACH : no. of parts in ADL :: no. of parts in the base CH : no. of parts in DL :: base CH : DL. Consequently the triangle ACH : ADL :: base CH : DL (Propor. 34). Therefore, triangles &c. Q. E. D.

The two demonstrations of this proposition do not include the case of incommensurable quantities, which kind of quantities may, without impropriety, be called incomprehensible quantities. The reason of this defect, if it be deemed such, is, that I know no demonstration of that case which is not incorrect, or unintelligible, or unsatisfactory.

## PROPOSITIONS XI, XII, XIII.

These three problems may be resolved algebraically as follows.

Prop. XI. Let  $AB = a$ ,  $BD = b$ ,  $BC = x$ ; then  $a : b :: b : x$ ,  $\therefore x = \frac{bb}{a}$ .

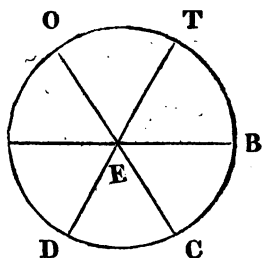
Prop. XII. Let  $a, b, c$ , denote the three given lines, and let  $x = HF$ ; then  $a : b :: c : x$ ,  $\therefore x = \frac{bc}{a}$ .

Prop. XIII. Let  $AB = a$ ,  $BC = b$ , and  $x =$  mean required; then  $a : x :: x : b$ ,  $\therefore xx = ab$ ,  $\therefore x = \sqrt{ab} = DB$ .

## PROPOSITION XXXIII.

Several demonstrations of this proposition, including both commensurable and incommensurable quantities, have been attempted by different authors; but they are all either unsatisfactory, or unintelligible to learners. The proposition may be proved in a plain and satisfactory manner as follows.

Suppose two lines to be placed on each other, so as to make only one line  $AB$ . Let one line be fixed, and the other moveable round the centre  $E$  of a circle. As soon as  $AE$  begins to move round the centre  $E$ , it will describe arches  $AO$ ,  $OT$ , &c. and will make angles with the fixed line.



The successive angles  $AEO$ ,  $OET$ , &c. will be greater or less according as the opposite arches are greater or less. When the point  $A$  arrives at  $T$  the angle  $AET$  will be described, and when it arrives at  $B$  the arch  $ATB$  will be a semicircle, or 180 degrees; and the sum of the angles, or  $AEO + OET + TEB$ , is equal to two right angles (13. 1). Let  $EA$  continue to revolve, and the point  $A$  will describe the arches  $BC$ ,  $CD$ ,  $DA$ ; and the radius  $EA$  will make the angles  $BEC$ ,  $CED$ ,  $DEA$ , in the same time. Hence it appears that the arches and angles begin and end together. Consequently the successive angles vary as the opposite arches; therefore the arches are the measures of the angles; that is, the angles are to one another as the arches which are opposite to them, or the angle  $AEO : AET :: \text{arch } AO : AT$ , or the angle  $AEO : OET :: \text{arch } AO : OT$ .

This is 1 Cor. 33, and is manifestly the same as if the angles  $AEO$ ,  $AET$ , &c. were at the centres of two equal circles.



## PROPOSITIONS Q, R, S.

These three propositions are demonstrated by the method of Indivisibles, which is explained in the Note on 6. 12, page 185.

## NOTES ON BOOK XI.

This book treats of the intersection of straight lines with planes, and of planes with planes.

Most of the propositions in Playfair's second Supplement are so plain and obvious that they are nearly self-evident, and scarcely require any proof. Indeed they are so simple in their nature that many of the demonstrations are artificial and difficult, and do not render their truth more manifest to the reader. As they do not often occur in mathematics, students might be permitted to omit the demonstrations; and it would perhaps be sufficient to illustrate the propositions by simple experiments made by cutting card paper (or any thick paper), and disposing the parts in such positions as the enunciations indicate.

## NOTES ON BOOK XII.

This book treats of the properties and relations of solid bodies.

Most of the propositions are taken from Keith's Euclid, which contains a better selection of theorems than Playfair's Geometry. Besides, the demonstrations are free from the obscurity of Euclid's method of demonstration and uncouth phraseology, which seem to have impeded the study of geometry in Britain and America. The use of the geometry of solids seldom occurs, and therefore this Book need not be read till it is wanted in the theory of Mensuration of solids.

## PROPOSITION VI.

This proposition and others are demonstrated by the Method of Indivisibles, which was invented by Cavalleri, an Italian, and published in 1635. This method is not strictly geometrical, but the demonstrations derived from it are plain and satisfactory to students. By it the areas of plane and curve surfaces, and the contents of solids are determined with ease and accuracy.

It is applied by recent writers in mathematical demonstrations without any explanation of its principles, which are plain and simple, and may be explained as follows

1. The limit of any line, when it is diminished, is a line infinitely short, or a point. For by continually taking away parts of the line we can render the remainder shorter than any assignable line. In the same manner the limit of a surface is

A a

a surface infinitely narrow, or a line; and the limit of a solid is a solid infinitely thin, or a surface.

2. It follows that a line is equal to an infinite number of points. For the line being divided into parts, the whole line is equal to the sum of all its parts. But as we diminish the magnitude of each part, or increase the number of parts, the limit of each part is a point. Hence the line will be equal to the sum of those points, which are infinite in number. In the same manner a surface is equal to an infinite number of lines, and a solid to an infinite number of surfaces. Consequently a point is naturally called the *element* of a line, and a line the element of a surface, and a surface the element of a solid. Each of these elements, having at least one of its dimensions infinitely small, and therefore is incapable of diminution, or subdivision, is called an *indivisible*.

3. There are various ways in which this conception may be applied to the same geometrical quantity. Thus, a circle may be conceived to be composed either of parallel chords, or of the circumferences of concentric circles. A solid may be conceived to consist of parallel *laminæ*, or extremely thin plates, resembling the leaves of a book, but the thickness of a leaf is infinitely greater than that of the element of the solid.

4. The difference between a chord and its arch can be made as small as we please in comparison of either of them; so that either of them may be called the limit of the other. In this sense an infinitely small arch is equal to its chord; and any finite arch is equal to an endless number of straight lines. In the same manner any infinitely small portion of a curve surface is equal to the plane which forms its base; and any finite portion of a curve surface is equal to an endless number of planes. Hence a circle will be a regular polygon of an infinite number of sides, and a sphere will be a polyedron of an infinite number of faces.

Without conceiving bodies to be composed of an infinite number of extremely thin elementary plates, parallel to one another, their equality may be proved by help of the following principle, which is so obvious that it may be admitted as an axiom.

*Axiom.* If any two solids standing on the same base, or on equal bases, and between the same parallels, be cut by numerous planes in directions parallel to their bases; and if all the sections at equal altitudes be equal to one another, the two solids will be equal to each other.

From this axiom we infer that the proposition is true.

FINIS.

# Store of Blanks,

AT No. 24, ARCH STREET.

## CATALOGUE.

Fee simple, Ground-rent, and Sheriff's Deeds, on parchment.	Proceedings against Tenant holding over.—1. Notice. 2. Complaint.
Ground-rent and Fee simple Deeds, on fine paper.	3. Precept.
Mortgages, on fine folio post paper.	4. Inquisition.
Do: on foolscap.	5. Record.
Bond and Warrant.	6. Warrant to make restitution.
Refunding Bond.	<i>Declarations:</i>
Bond and Petition of Insolvents.	Commencement and Conclusion.
Final Petition of Insolvents.	Insimul computassent.
Insolvent Notices.	Common money count.
Discharge.	Work, labour, and materials.
Power of Attorney.	Use and occupation.
Bill of Exceptions.	Money lent and paid, laid out &c.
General release.	Money had and received.
Lease.	Goods sold and delivered.
Bill of sale.	A dec. containing several counts.
Certificate and rule of reference.	Debt on Bond.
Letter of instructions to Commissioners.	Debt by Assignee of Bond: 1st, 2d, and 3d assignments.
Notice to enter special bail.	On Bail Bond. [ment.
Lien Entry for work or materials.	On bond, with confession of judgment.
Articles of separation between husband and wife.	On Slander.
Assignment for the benefit of creditors.	Indorsee v. Indorser.
Petition for divorce.	Indorsee v. Drawer.
Trial Notice.	Drawee v. Drawer.
Affidavit of defence.	On Policy of Insurance.
	On boarding and lodging.
	Trover—for a single article, and for several articles of property.

Also Magistrates' Blanks, Custom-house Blanks, Bills of Exchange, Bank Checks, Bills of Lading, &c.

☞ *The above Law Blanks have been carefully corrected by several of the most able Attorneys in the city of Philadelphia.*







10/34  
20

